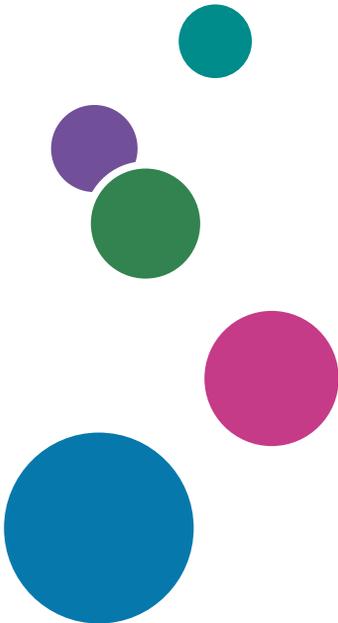




Operator's Guide

Original Instructions

Getting Started	1
Paper Specifications and Adding Paper	2
Paper Settings	3
Adjustment Setting Items for a Custom Paper	4
Adjustment Settings for Operators	5
Troubleshooting	6
Specifications for The Machine	7
Legal and Contact Information	8



For information not found in this manual, see the online manuals available on our web site (<https://www.ricoh.com/>) or via the control panel.



For safe and correct use, be sure to read Safety Information before using the machine.

How to Read the Manuals

Symbols Used in the Manuals

This manual uses the following symbols:

Important

Indicates points to pay attention to when using functions. This symbol indicates points that may result in the product or service becoming unusable or result in the loss of data if the instructions are not obeyed. Be sure to read these explanations.

Note

Indicates supplementary explanations of the machine's functions, and instructions on resolving user errors.

[]

Indicates the names of keys or buttons on the product or display.

Notes

Contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

The manufacturer shall not be responsible for any damage or expense that might result from the use of parts other than genuine parts from the manufacturer with your office products.

For good output quality, the manufacturer recommends that you use genuine toner from the manufacturer.

Some illustrations in this manual might be slightly different from the machine.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

How to Read the Manuals.....	1
Symbols Used in the Manuals.....	1
Notes.....	1
1. Getting Started	
Abbreviated Names of Options.....	11
System Configuration.....	13
Turning On and Off the Power.....	14
Turning On the Main Power.....	14
Turning Off the Main Power.....	15
Energy Saving Mode.....	15
Anti-humidity Heater Switch.....	17
Guide to Names and Functions of Components.....	19
Front and Left View.....	19
Front and Right View.....	21
Rear and Right View.....	22
Guide to Functions of the Attention Light.....	23
Machine Options.....	25
Guide to Functions of the Machine's External Options.....	25
Guide to Functions of the Machine's Internal Options/Option Controller.....	29
Special Notes When Using External Options.....	30
Precautions for Using the Finisher.....	30
Removing Prints from Finisher /Booklet Finisher during Printing or When in Standby State.....	30
When Using the Z-fold Function.....	32
When Ejecting Thin Paper to Finisher/Booklet Finisher.....	33
When Ejecting Carbonless Paper Weighing 63 g/m ² or Less to Finisher/Booklet Finisher.....	34
When Ejecting Banner Sheets to Finisher/Booklet Finisher.....	35
When Ejecting a Large Number of Booklets to the Booklet Tray of Booklet Finisher.....	35
When Printing on Extra-long Coated Banner Sheets (700.1 mm, 27.6 Inches or Longer) of Paper Weight 163 g/m ² (60 lb. Cover) or Less Using the Extension Output Banner Sheet Tray.....	36
When Using the High Capacity Stacker.....	37
When Ejecting Thick Paper or Envelopes to the Upper Tray of the High Capacity Stacker.....	41
Precautions Taking Booklets from the Trimmer.....	41
Names and Functions of the Control Panel.....	43

Touch Panel/Interface.....	43
Operation Workflow of Account Management.....	45
Create a Role for the User.....	46
Functions Assigned to the Operation Set.....	46
Registering/Modifying/Deleting a Role for a User.....	49
Registering/Modifying/Deleting a User Account.....	51
Logging In.....	53
Logging In by Entering the User Name and Password.....	53
Changing the Login Password.....	54
Screen Configuration of the Navigation Bar.....	56
Screen Configuration of the [Home] Hub.....	58
Intuitive Screen Operation Using Fingertips.....	59
Screen Configuration of the [Media] Hub.....	60
Screen Configuration of [Schedule] Hub.....	61
Screen Configuration of the [Task] Hub.....	62
Understanding the [DFE Console] Hub.....	65
Using the Fiery Settings Hub.....	66
Screen Configuration of [Printer Adjustment] Hub.....	67
Screen Configuration of the [Settings] Hub.....	68

2. Paper Specifications and Adding Paper

Loading Paper into the Paper Tray.....	69
Fanning the Paper.....	70
Loading Paper into Tray 1.....	72
Loading Paper into the A3/11 × 17 Tray Unit.....	74
Loading Paper into Tray 2.....	75
Loading Tab Stock into Tray 2.....	76
Loading Paper into the Multi Bypass Tray (Tray A).....	76
Loading Tab Stock into the Multi Bypass Tray (Tray A).....	78
Loading Paper on the Multi Bypass Banner Sheet Tray.....	79
Loading Paper into the Wide Large Capacity Tray.....	80
Attaching the Tab Fence in the Wide Large Capacity Tray.....	85
Attaching the Small Tab End Fence to the Wide Large Capacity Tray.....	86
Loading the Paper on LCT Banner Sheet Tray.....	87

Loading the Paper on the Extension LCT Banner Sheet Tray.....	91
Loading Paper into the Interposer.....	95
Loading Cover Sheets into the Interposer of the Perfect Binder.....	96
Specifying the Paper Size That Is Not Automatically Detected.....	98
Specifying a Custom Size Paper.....	99
Recommended Paper Sizes and Types.....	101
Tray 1.....	101
Tray 1 (A3/11 × 17 tray unit).....	102
Tray 2.....	103
Wide LCT (Trays 3–8)*1*14.....	105
Multi bypass tray (Tray A).....	113
Interposer.....	116
Interposer of the perfect binder.....	120
Notes on Special Paper.....	122
Paper Weight for Each Paper Thickness.....	123
Unusable Paper.....	124
Paper Storage.....	126
Saving Printouts.....	127
Envelope Orientation and Recommended Status.....	128

3. Paper Settings

Registering a Custom Paper.....	131
Overview of Paper Settings.....	131
How to Use the [Media] Hub.....	134
Registering a Custom Paper.....	135
Registering a Custom Paper with the Media Identification Unit.....	139
Creating a Group to Manage Paper.....	144
Modifying a Custom Paper.....	146
Adding a Paper Size to Custom Paper.....	147
Searching for a Paper by Specifying the Conditions.....	148
Exporting the Settings of a Custom Paper to a File in CSV Format.....	149
Exporting/Importing the Settings of Custom Paper.....	150
Deleting a Custom Paper.....	152
Changing Tray Paper Settings.....	154

Specifying a Custom Paper on the Tray in the [Media] Hub.....	154
Specifying a Custom Paper on the Tray in the [Home] Hub.....	154
Specifying the General Settings on a Tray in the [Home] Hub.....	155

4. Adjustment Setting Items for a Custom Paper

Detailed Settings Screen for a Custom Paper.....	157
Procedure for Specifying the Detailed Settings of a Custom Paper.....	157
Specifying the Detailed Settings of a Custom Paper.....	158
11: Machine: Image Position.....	159
1102: Auto Adjust Image Position.....	159
1103: Image Position Feedback Correction.....	159
1104: Image Position Gap.....	160
12: Machine: Image Quality.....	161
1201: Max Image Density.....	161
1211: Image Transfer Output: Default.....	161
1212: Image Transfer Output.....	162
1213: Paper Transfer Output: Default.....	163
1214: Paper Transfer Output.....	165
1215: Paper Transfer Output Correction: Paper Edge: Default.....	167
1216: Paper Transfer Output Correction: Paper Edge.....	168
1218: Paper Transfer Output.....	170
1222: Paper Transfer Nip Operation Mode.....	170
1223: Paper Transfer Nip.....	171
1224: Paper Transfer Pressure Mode.....	171
1225: Paper Transfer Pressure.....	172
1227: Paper Transfer Roller Reverse Rotation.....	172
1231: Print Speed.....	172
1232: Fusing Temperature.....	174
1233: Fusing Pressure Temperature.....	178
1234: Print Mode When Switching Paper Type.....	179
1235: Fusing Temperature Range.....	179
1236: Fusing Pressure Roller Cooling.....	181
1237: Print Speed (Sheet Interval Adj).....	182
1238: Fusing Cleaning.....	183

1239: Margin.....	183
1240: Fusing Nip Width: Paper Type.....	184
1241: Fusing Nip Width Adjustment.....	184
1242: Initial Fusing Temperature for Envelope.....	184
1243: Fusing Belt Smoothing.....	185
1244 Fusing Pressure Roller On Before Fusing.....	185
1245: Gloss Control.....	185
13: Machine: Paper Feed/Output.....	187
1301: 2-Tray LCIT: Paper Feed Mode.....	187
1302: 2-Tray LCIT: Fan/Shutter.....	187
1303: 2-Tray LCIT: Other Settings.....	190
1312: Main/Bypass.....	191
1321: Correct Paper Curl.....	192
1331: Jam Detection.....	192
1341: Motor Speed.....	194
1351: Interposer.....	194
1361: Finisher: Output.....	195

5. Adjustment Settings for Operators

How to Use the "Operator Adjust." Screen.....	197
Configuration Procedure of Operator Adjust.....	198
Features of the Displayed Items for Operator Adjust.....	198
01: Machine: Image Position.....	200
0101: Perpendicularity Adjustment.....	200
02: Machine: Image Quality.....	201
0201: Execute Image Quality Adjustment.....	201
0202: Maximum Image Density.....	201
0203: Line Width.....	202
0204: Density Difference: Across Feed.....	202
0205: Density Difference Printing: Setting.....	203
03: Machine: Paper Feed/ Output.....	204
0301: Detect JAM048.....	204
0303: Buffer Pass Unit Fan Activation Setting.....	204
0305: Remaining Paper Output Tray When Misfeed Occurs.....	204

0307: Auto Continue Paper Feeding.....	205
05: Machine: Maintenance.....	206
0501: Execute Process Adjustment.....	206
0502: Screw-on Cap to Replace.....	206
0503: Execute Charger Unit Cleaning.....	206
0506: Execute Developer Refreshing.....	206
0508: Manually Smooth Fusing Belt.....	207
0509: Fusing Belt Manual Smoothing Adjustment.....	207
0510: Fusing Belt Auto Smoothing Setting.....	207
0511: Fusing Belt Smoothing Adjustment.....	208
0512: Fuser Unit Speed Adjustment.....	208
0513: Wind Fuser Cleaning Unit at Replacement.....	209
0514: Temperature/Humidity Inside.....	209
0515: Display System Message for When Outside Optimal Range.....	209
0518: Counter Setting for Operating Multiple Fuser Units.....	210
0594: ITB: Reset Belt Position at Replacement.....	210
0595: ITB: Feedback Sensor Light Intensity Adjustment.....	210
0596: ITB: Feedback Sensor Initial Phase Acquisition.....	210
0597: ITB: Feedback Control Status.....	211
0598: ITB: Speed Adjustment During Encoder Control.....	211
0599: Reset Parts Counter.....	211
06: Finishing: Finisher.....	220
0601: Staple Position for Booklet.....	220
0602: Folding Position for Booklet.....	221
0603: Staple Position: Across Feed 1.....	223
0604: Staple Position: Across Feed 2.....	224
0605: Staple Position: With Feed.....	225
0606: Punch Position: Across Feed.....	226
0607: Punch Position: With Feed.....	227
0609: Set Number of Folds for Booklet.....	228
0637: Staple Tray: Rib Installed Mode to Strengthen Paper.....	228
0638: Accuracy Priority for Stapling.....	229
0639: Accuracy Priority for Booklet.....	229

07: Finishing: Fold.....	230
0701: Z-fold Position 1	230
0702: Z-fold Position 2.....	230
0703: Half Fold Position.....	231
0704: Letter Fold-out Position 1: 1 sheet Fold.....	232
0705: Letter Fold-out Position 1: Multi-sheet Fold.....	233
0706: Letter Fold-out Position 2: 1 sheet Fold.....	234
0707: Letter Fold-out Position 2: Multi-sheet Fold.....	235
0708: Letter Fold-in Position 1: 1 sheet Fold.....	235
0709: Letter Fold-in Position 1: Multi-sheet Fold.....	236
0710: Letter Fold-in Position 2: 1 sheet Fold.....	236
0711: Letter Fold-in Position 2: Multi-sheet Fold.....	237
08: Finishing: Perfect Binder.....	239
0801: Cover Sheet Position for Perfect Binding: Across Feed.....	239
0802: Cover Sheet Position for Perfect Binding: With Feed.....	239
0803: Perfect Binding Finishing Angle.....	239
0804: Applying Binding Glue.....	240
09: Finishing: Stacker.....	242
0901: Paper Alignment in Stacker Tray: Across Feed 1	242
0902: Paper Alignment in Stacker Tray: Across Feed 2.....	242
0903: Paper Alignment in Stacker Tray: With Feed.....	243
0904: Paper Alignment in 2nd Stacker Tray: Across Feed 1	244
0905: Paper Alignment in 2nd Stacker Tray: Across Feed 2.....	245
0906: Paper Alignment in 2nd Stacker Tray: With Feed.....	246
0907: Maximum Stack Quantity in Stacker Tray.....	246
21: Finishing: Interposer.....	248
2101: Detect JAM573.....	248
2101: Detect JAM574.....	248
2102: Interposer Fan Setting.....	248

6. Troubleshooting

Alert Sounds.....	249
Checking the Messages Displayed on the Control Panel.....	250
When an Alarm Icon Is Displayed.....	250

When the Machine Cannot Be Operated.....	252
When a Message Appears and the Machine Cannot Be Operated.....	253
When Machine Login Fails.....	255
When Paper Is Jammed.....	256
When the Animation Does Not Appear.....	258
Ejecting the Paper Jammed in the Post Processor Unit Automatically.....	269
When a Staple Is Jammed.....	271
Booklet Finisher.....	272
Booklet Finisher (Saddle Stitch).....	273
When the Hole Punch Receptacle Is Full.....	274
Removing Staple Waste.....	275
Removing Waste Paper.....	276
When a Deviation in Color Registration Appears.....	277

7. Specifications for The Machine

Model-Specific Information.....	279
Specifications for the Main Unit.....	280
List of Specifications for External Options.....	283
Specifications for Finisher.....	283
Specifications for Booklet Finisher.....	291
Specifications for Punch Unit (Finisher, Booklet Finisher).....	302
Specifications for Interposer.....	303
Specifications for Multi-Folding Unit.....	304
Specifications for Wide LCT.....	305
Specifications for Multi Bypass Tray (Tray A).....	306
Specifications for Wide LCT Connection Unit.....	307
Specifications for Buffer Pass Unit.....	307
Specifications for Trimmer.....	308
Specifications for High Capacity Stacker.....	310
Specifications for Perfect Binder.....	311
Printable Area and Margin.....	314

8. Legal and Contact Information

Environmental Regulations.....	317
ENERGY STAR Program  Region B (mainly North America).....	317

Energy Saving Functions.....	317
User Information on Electrical and Electronic Equipment  Region A (mainly Europe).....	319
User Information on Electrical and Electronic Equipment  Region A (mainly Asia).....	320
Environmental Advice for Users  Region A (mainly Europe).....	321
Notes to users in the state of California (Notes to Users in USA)  Region B (mainly North America)....	322
Trademarks.....	323

1. Getting Started

Abbreviated Names of Options

In the manuals, the abbreviated names of options are used. The abbreviated names and corresponding product names are as follows:

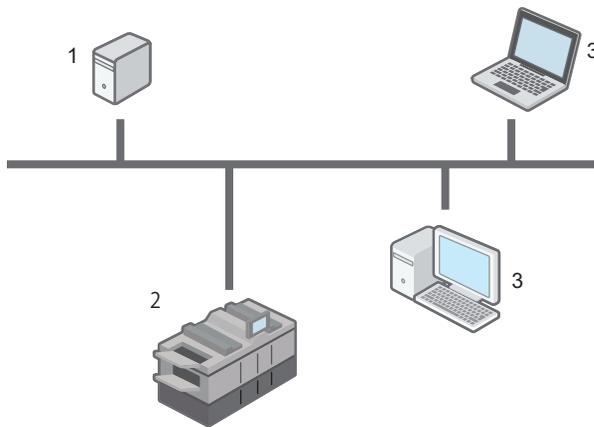
Abbreviated name	Product name
Finisher	Finisher SR5110
Booklet Finisher	Booklet Finisher SR5120
Output banner sheet tray	SR5000 series Output Tray for Banner Sheet Type S6
Extension output banner sheet tray	Extension Output Banner Sheet Tray Type S14
Punch Unit	Punch Unit PU5030 EU
	Punch Unit PU5030 SC
	Punch Unit PU5030 NA
Multi bypass banner sheet tray	Multi Bypass Banner Sheet Tray Type S9
Multi bypass attachment kit	Multi Bypass Attachment Kit for Vacuum Feed LCIT Type S9
Multi bypass tray (Tray A)	Multi Bypass Tray BY5020
Wide LCT	Vacuum Feed LCIT RT5150
Bridge unit of wide LCT	Bridge Unit BU5010
LCT banner sheet tray	Vacuum Feed Banner Sheet Tray Type S9
Extension LCT Banner Sheet Tray	Extension Vacuum Feed Banner Sheet Tray Type S14
Multi-folding unit	Multi-Folding Unit FD5030
Buffer pass unit	Buffer Pass Unit Type S9
High capacity stacker	High Capacity Stacker SK5040
Roll-away cart	Roll-Away Cart Type 5010

Abbreviated name	Product name
Trimmer	Trimmer Unit TR5050
Interposer	Cover Interposer Tray CI5040
Double-feed detection kit for the interposer	Cover Interposer Tray Double-Feed Detection Kit Type S11
A3/11 × 17 tray unit	A3/11"×17" Tray Unit Type TK5010
Perfect binder	Perfect Binder GB5010
	Cover Interposer Tray for Perfect Binder Type S1
	Transit Pass Unit for Perfect Binder Type S1
Bridge Unit	Bridge Unit BU5020
Fiery controller	Color Controller N-50A
	Color Controller N-70A
5th station replacement unit	5th Station Replacement Unit Type S14
EFI 5th station hardware upgrade kit	EFI 5th Station Hardware Upgrade Kit Type S9
5th station upgrade kit	5th Station Upgrade Kit Type S14
Toner interchange unit	Toner Interchange Unit Type S14
Productivity upgrade unit	Productivity Upgrade Unit Type S14
 Region A (mainly Europe)  Region B (mainly North America) Interface box	RPIP Interface Box Type S3

System Configuration

By connecting the machine to a DFE and client computer over a network, you can operate a printing system as shown below and control the machine to print documents using the control panel of the machine.

Also, you can view and operate the screen that is displayed on the control panel of the machine from another computer connected via the network in a web browser.



1. DFE (Digital Front End)

This device processes and forms images of the print data.

2. Device Unit (this Machine)

This device performs printing operations (feeding and transporting paper, and forming images). This device communicates with the DFE to obtain information, and delivers the UI contents for printing and configuring/adjusting various settings on the control panel of the machine and the client computer.

3. Client Computer

This is a computer that can connect to the machine over a network. You can perform the same operations as you perform on the control panel of the machine directly. It obtains the information from the machine over the network, and displays the UI content for printing and configuring/adjusting various settings in the web browser running on the client computer.

Turning On and Off the Power

To turn the machine on and off, press the main power switch on the top left of the machine.

★ Important

- Do not push the main power switch repeatedly.
- When you push the main power switch, wait at least 10 seconds after it is confirmed that the main power indicator has lit up or gone out.
- If the main power indicator does not light up or go out in 5 minutes after you push the main power switch, contact your service representative.
- Confirm how much power the options draw, and then plug them into an outlet that is nearby but separate from the outlet that the main machine is plugged into.

↓ Note

- This machine automatically enters Low Power mode (Standby for Printing Priority), Low Power mode (Energy Saving Priority) or Sleep mode if you do not use it for a while. For details, see page 15 "Energy Saving Mode".
- When the power of the DFE is set to synch with the power of the machine, turning the power of the machine on or off also turns the power of the DFE on or off. Turn on the power of the machine first, and then turn on the power of the DFE if the power of the DFE is not set to synch with the machine. To turn off the power of the machine and DFE, turn off the power of the DFE first, and then turn off the machine.

Turning On the Main Power

1. Make sure the power cord is firmly plugged into the wall outlet.
2. Open the main power switch cover, and then push the main power switch.

The main power indicator goes on.



M0EBIM2138

Note

- If the machine does not turn on even if you press the main power switch, open the front left cover and make sure that the AC power switch is turned on. For details about the AC power switch, see below.
- See "Notes on Usage of the Machine", User Guide.

Turning Off the Main Power

CAUTION

- When disconnecting the power cord from the wall outlet, always pull the plug, not the cord. Pulling the cord can damage the power cord. Use of damaged power cords could result in fire or electric shock.

Important

- **Do not turn off the power while the machine is in operation.**
- **Do not hold down the main power switch while turning off the main power. Doing so forcibly turns off the machine's power and may damage the SSD or memory and cause malfunctions.**

1. Open the main power switch cover, and then push the main power switch.

The main power indicator goes out. The main power turns off automatically when the machine shuts down. If the screen on the control panel does not disappear, contact your service representative.

To turn off the main power of the machine from the control panel, press , and then press [System Maintenance] ► [Power Management] ► [Shutdown Printer].

Energy Saving Mode

The machine enters the Energy Saving mode automatically if no operation is performed for the specified period of time.

Energy Saving mode has the following two stages:

First stage: Low Power mode (Standby for Printing Priority) or Low Power mode (Energy Saving Priority)

Second stage: Sleep mode

You can specify either "Standby for Printing Priority" or "Energy Saving Priority" only in Low Power mode.

In the factory default setting, the machine enters the "Low Power mode (Standby for Printing Priority)", and then shifts to the "Sleep mode".

Low Power Mode (Standby for Printing Priority)

If you do not perform an operation for a specified period of time, the screen of the control panel turns off while the main power indicator keeps flashing, and the machine enters the Low Power mode (Standby for Printing Priority). In this state, the power consumption is lower than in the normal standby mode.

- You can specify the time to wait before the machine enters the Low Power mode in [Low Power Mode Timer].
See "Printer Settings", User Guide.
- When you touch the control panel screen while the machine is in the Low Power mode (Standby for Printing Priority), the machine recovers from the Low Power mode (Standby for Printing Priority) and displays the operation screen.
- In [Energy Saver Key to Change Mode], you can change the setting of the machine to enter the Low Power mode (Standby for Printing Priority) when you press  (Energy Saver Key).
See "Printer Settings", User Guide.

Low Power Mode (Energy Saving Priority)

If you do not operate the machine for a specified period of time, the machine emits a clicking sound and enters the Low Power mode (Energy Saving Priority) while turning off the heater in the fusing unit with the control panel displaying the operation screen. In this state, the power consumption is constrained further compared to the Low Power mode (Standby for Printing Priority).

- To enable the Low Power mode (Energy Saving Priority), select [Energy Saving Priority] in [Low Power Mode Entry]. You can specify the time the machine waits before entering the Low Power mode in [Low Power Mode Timer].
See "Printer Settings", User Guide.
- Operations that do not involve printing, such as changing the machine settings from the control panel, are executed while the machine remains in the Low Power mode (Energy Saving Priority).

Sleep Mode

The control panel screen turns off, and the main power indicator flashes slowly. The machine consumes the least energy in this mode. The machine enters the Sleep mode when no operation is performed for a specified period of time, or when you press  (Energy Saver Key).

- You can specify the time the machine waits before entering the Sleep Mode in [Sleep Mode Timer].
See "Printer Settings", User Guide.
- The machine recovers from the Sleep mode when you touch the screen of the control panel.

Note

-  (Energy Saver Key) appears on the control panel screen only. The key does not appear when you access the screen from a client computer.

- The machine does not enter the energy saving mode in the following cases:
 - When fixed warm-up is in progress
 - When operations are suspended during printing
 - When a screen that does not support Auto Logout is displayed
- The machine does not enter Low Power Mode (Energy Saving Priority) in the following cases:
 - When the covers of the machine including the covers of the external options are open
 - When a user is operating on the control panel of the machine (excluding operations from a client computer)
- The machine does not enter Sleep Mode in the following cases:
 - When the machine is warming up
 - When the machine is initializing its data
 - When the machine is preparing to restart
 - When receiving remote support from a call center
 - When the machine is performing Image Position adjustment
 - When performing a Batch Update of the system
 - When outputting the device information of the machine
- Even when the machine is in the energy saving mode, you can connect remotely to the machine from the web browser on a client computer as long as the printer controller remains turned on.

Anti-humidity Heater Switch

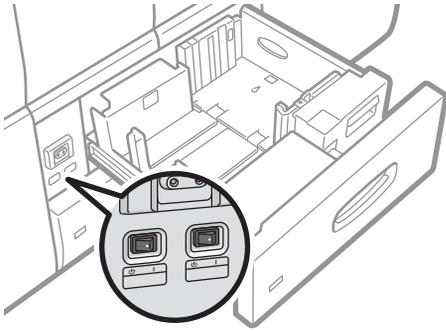
During winter or humid periods when there can be sudden changes in temperature and humidity, the paper in the paper trays can absorb moisture. This may cause image quality to deteriorate.

To prevent this, the machine has two built-in anti-humidity heaters.

There are two switches for the anti-humidity heaters on the internal cover which is revealed when the Tray 1 is pulled out. Turn these switches on if the humidity level becomes high and image quality is affected. Turn the switches off at other times.

The left switch is for the paper tray heater and the right switch is for the transfer unit heater.

1



MOEBIM2145

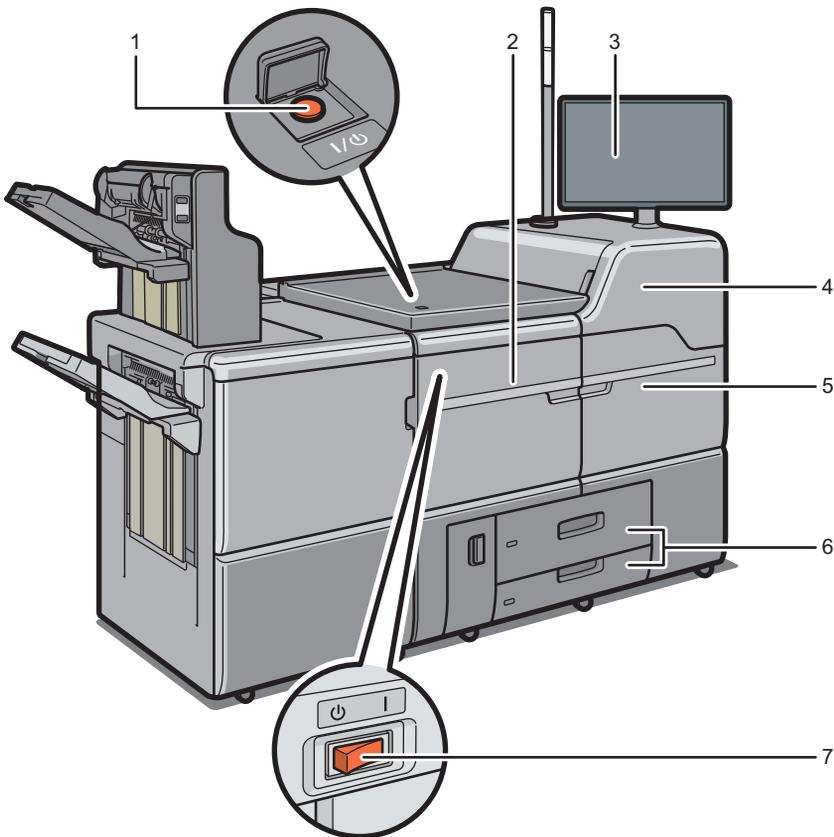
Guide to Names and Functions of Components

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not obstruct the machine's vents. Doing so can result in fire as the internal components are overheated.

1

Front and Left View



MOEBIM2101

1. Main power switch

To operate the machine, the main power switch must be on. If it is off, open the main power switch's cover and turn the switch on.

See page 14 "Turning On and Off the Power"

2. Front left cover

Open to remove paper jams or turn on/off the AC power switch.

3. Control panel

See page 43 "Names and Functions of the Control Panel"

4. Front upper right cover

Install toner cartridges here. Open the cover to replace toner cartridges.

5. Front right cover

Open to remove paper jams.

6. Paper trays (Trays 1–2)

Load paper here. Tray 1 is a tandem tray where paper on the left side automatically moves to the right when paper there has run out.

An indicator on the front left side of the tray lights while paper is feeding.

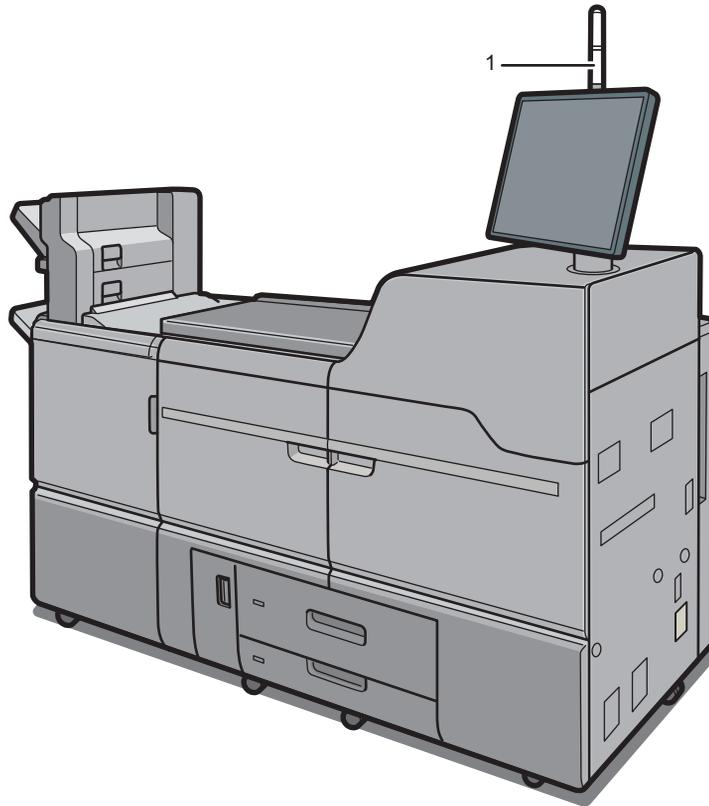
7. AC power switch

Press to completely turn off the power of the machine. The AC power switch must be kept on in normal use. The switch is inside the front left cover.

For details about the AC power switch, see below.

See "Notes on Usage of the Machine", User Guide.

Front and Right View



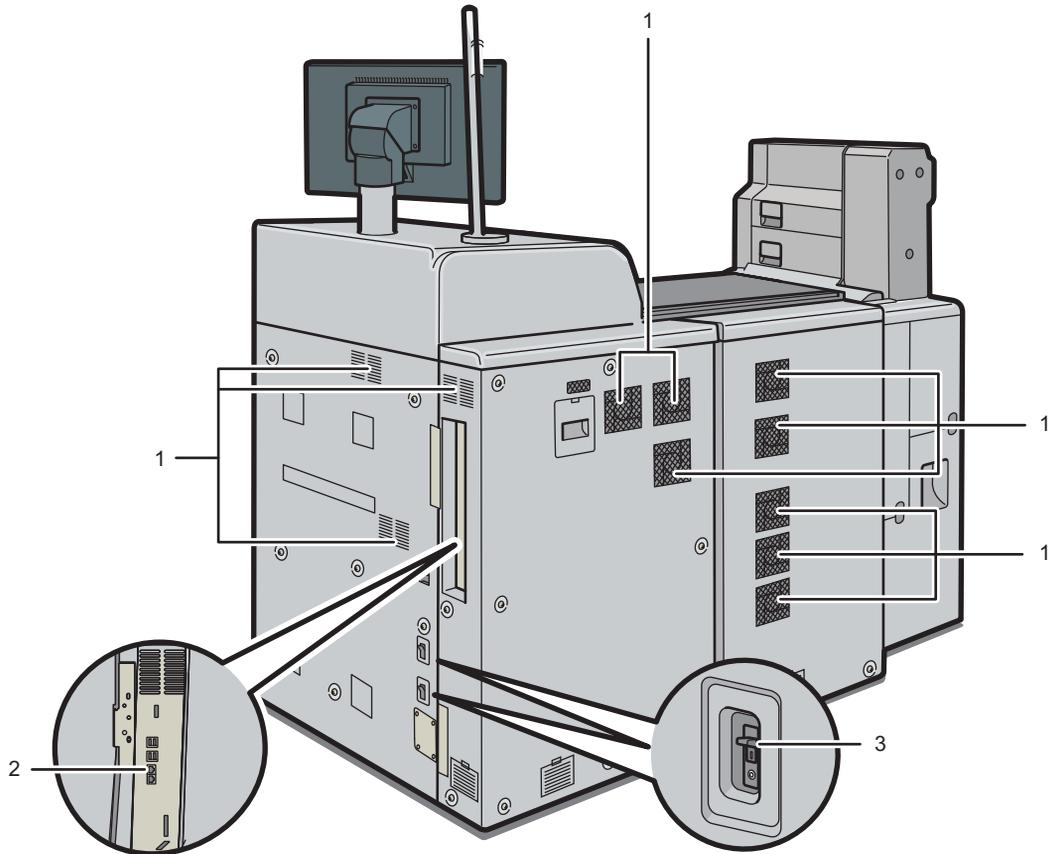
1

1. Attention light

See page 23 "Guide to Functions of the Attention Light"

M0EBIM2102

Rear and Right View



MOEBIM0103

1. Vents

Prevent overheating.

2. Remote management service connection port

Use this port to connect to the remote management services over the Internet.

3. Earth leakage breaker

Protects users from electric shock. For details about checking the earth leakage breaker, see below.

See "Checking the Earth Leakage Breakers", User Guide.

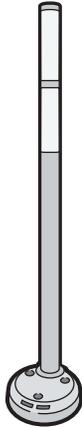
↓ Note

- If you perform a large amount of print jobs in a high-temperature environment, the print jobs may be suspended and the machine's inner fans near the vents continue running to cool the machine.
- The fan inside the machine near the vents may continue running to cool the machine after a large print job.

Guide to Functions of the Attention Light

★ Important

- Do not push or pull the attention light when installed to the machine. Doing so may result in damage or malfunction of the attention light or the machine.



CUV121

The attention light notifies the user by light when there is a paper jam or no paper is left.

The colors of the lamp and their meanings are as follows:

Lamp	Status
The bottom lamp lights blue.	Printing
The bottom lamp flashes blue.	Data in
The top lamp lights red.	<p>Error occurred (Example)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When the service call message appears • Paper jam • Out of paper • Out of toner • Memory overflow • Waste toner bottle full <p>Read the message on the display panel, and then take appropriate action.</p> <p>See page 253 "When a Message Appears and the Machine Cannot Be Operated".</p>

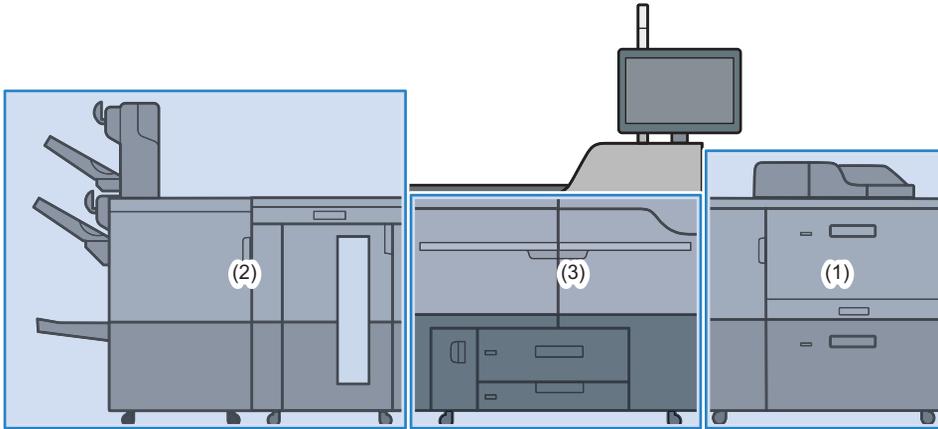
Lamp	Status
The top lamp flashes yellow.	<p>Warning (Example)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Toner has nearly run out.• Waste toner bottle is nearly full. <p>Read the message on the display panel, and then take appropriate action.</p> <p>See page 253 "When a Message Appears and the Machine Cannot Be Operated".</p>

Machine Options

Guide to Functions of the Machine's External Options

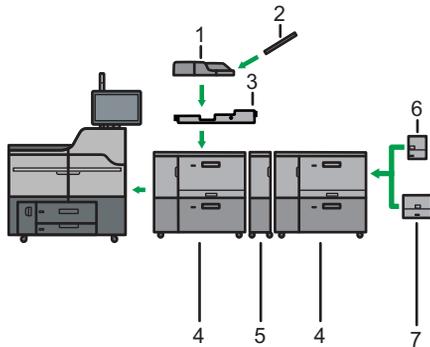
1

For the product names of options, see page 11 "Abbreviated Names of Options".



MOEBIM0501

(1) Options Mounted to the Machine's Right Side Section

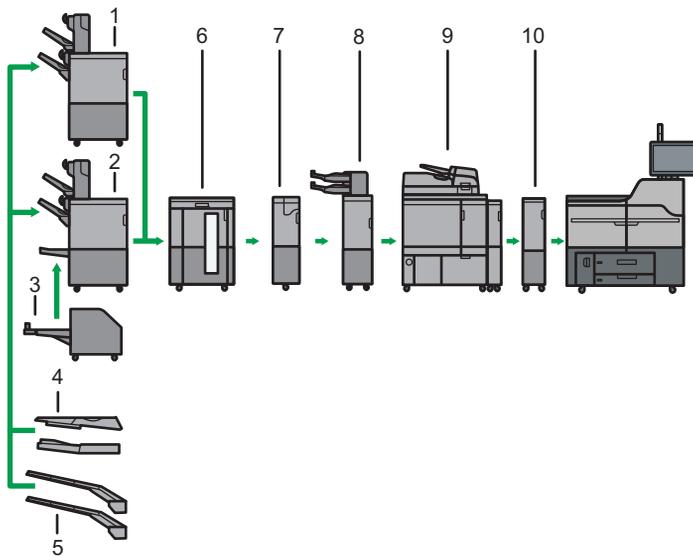


MOEBIM0502

No.	Option	Description
1	Multi bypass tray (Tray A)	Holds up to 500 sheets of paper.
2	Banner sheet tray of multi bypass tray (Tray A)	Allows you to load large-sized paper in the multi bypass tray (Tray A).
3	Multi bypass attachment kit	Attaches the multi bypass tray (Tray A) to the wide LCT.

No.	Option	Description
4	Wide LCT	Holds up to 4,800 sheets of paper. You can load paper whose sizes are up to SRA3 or $13 \times 19\frac{1}{5}$. You can connect up to three wide LCTs.
5	Bridge unit of wide LCT	Connects a wide LCT to an additional wide LCT.
6	LCT banner sheet tray	Allows you to load large-sized paper in the wide LCT.
7	Extension LCT banner sheet tray	Larger paper can be loaded on the wide LCT than when LCT banner sheet tray is attached.

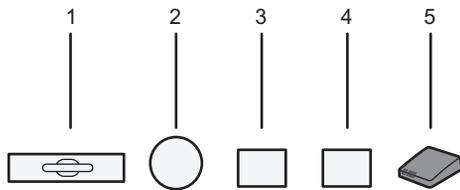
(2) Options Mounted to the Machine's Left Side Section



MOEBIM0503

No.	Option	Description
1	Finisher	Sorts, stacks, and staples multiple sheets of paper. Consists of the following paper trays: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Finisher shift tray 1 • Finisher shift tray 2 Prints can be punched if the optional punch unit is installed on the finisher.

No.	Option	Description
2	Booklet Finisher	<p>Sorts, stacks, and staples multiple sheets of paper. The saddle stitch function can staple multiple sheets of paper in the center and fold them into booklets. Consists of the following paper trays:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Finisher shift tray 1 • Finisher shift tray 2 • Finisher booklet tray <p>Prints can be punched if the optional punch unit is installed on the finisher.</p>
3	Trimmer unit	<p>Cuts the fore edge of the book block after the book block is saddle stitched.</p> <p>Booklet Finisher is required in order to attach this.</p>
4	Output banner sheet tray	<p>Paper that is 139.7–700.0 mm (19.2–27.6 inches) in the horizontal length can be ejected onto the booklet finisher or finisher.</p>
5	Extension output banner sheet tray	<p>Paper that is 139.7–1260.0 mm (19.2–49.7 inches) in the horizontal length can be ejected onto the booklet finisher or finisher.</p>
6	High capacity stacker	<p>Consists of the following paper trays:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stacker upper tray • Stacker tray <p>The stacker upper tray can hold up to 250 sheets of paper, and stacker tray can hold up to 5,000 sheets of paper. You can connect up to two high capacity stackers.</p>
7	Multi-folding unit	<p>Applies the following folds: Half Fold, Letter Fold-out, Letter Fold-in, and Z-fold.</p>
8	Interposer	<p>Inserts cover or slip sheets into printed paper. By attaching the double-feed detection kit for the interposer, the machine is configured to detect double feeds from the interposer.</p> <p>You can attach Finisher or Booklet Finisher together with this.</p>
9	Perfect binder	<p>Applies adhesive to the spine of gathered pages to bind them in a booklet.</p>
10	Buffer pass unit	<p>Cools printed paper.</p>

(3) Other Options

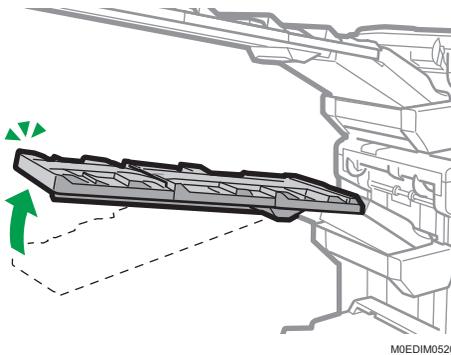
M0EBIM0504

No.	Option	Description
1	A3/11 × 17 tray unit	You can load paper sizes up to A3 \square or 11 × 17 \square in Tray 1 using this unit. If you install the A3/11 × 17 tray unit on your machine, you cannot use it as a tandem tray.
2	5th station upgrade kit	You can use the special color.
3	Toner interchange unit	Exchange the units for the black and special color to print a layer of white toner under other colors. You can print colors vividly in a single path even on dark-colored or metallic paper.
4	5th station replacement unit	You can exchange the special color to be used for another special color.
5	Interface box	Allows you to connect extended options to the machine.

↓ Note

- You cannot install multiple finishers simultaneously.
- If you have connected two high capacity stackers, you cannot install the multi-folding unit or the perfect binder.
- You can install the multi-folding unit only if either finisher or booklet finisher is installed.
- You can install the perfect binder only if one of the following options is installed: finisher, booklet finisher, or the high capacity stacker.
- The multi bypass tray (Tray A) can be attached only if the wide LCT is installed. However, you can attach the multi bypass tray (Tray A) to the wide LCT only if the multi bypass attachment kit is installed.
- When printing on banner paper on the machine with various banner sheet trays attached, the printed paper is ejected with the print side facing up. The appropriate setting in the printer driver or color controller is ignored.
- LCT banner sheet tray and extension LCT banner sheet tray cannot be attached at the same time.

- When using multiple linked wide LCT, LCT banner sheet tray/extension LCT banner sheet tray can be attached only to the wide LCT that is the furthest from the machine.
- When using multiple linked wide LCTs, the multi bypass tray (Tray A) can be attached only to the wide LCT closest to the machine.
- To prevent blocking, the buffer pass unit is required.
- Notes on the tray of extension output banner sheet tray
 - The tray folds up when force is applied downward on the tip of the tray. Do not push, lean on, or place an object on or near the tip of the tray. Doing so may cause damage or malfunction of the machine.
 - When the tray folds up, return it to its original position.



MOEDIM0520

Guide to Functions of the Machine's Internal Options/Option Controller

- Color controller
You can print documents using the optional controller.
- EFI 5th station hardware upgrade kit
You can use the special color on the color controller.
- Productivity upgrade unit
The sustained printing speed increases to 95 sheets per minute when you attach the option.

Special Notes When Using External Options

For the product names of options, see page 11 "Abbreviated Names of Options".

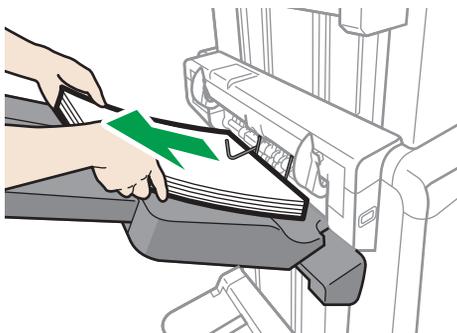
1

Precautions for Using the Finisher

- The stapler may eject unfolded staples. Be careful not to prick your fingers.
- Do not hit the finisher (for instance, do not hit the surface of the finisher repeatedly to arrange stacks of paper neatly).
- Remove printouts from the finisher by lifting them straightforwardly from the left side. If you remove printouts at an angle or towards the front, the shift tray may rise and catch them.

Booklet finisher

- Finisher shift tray 1 or 2



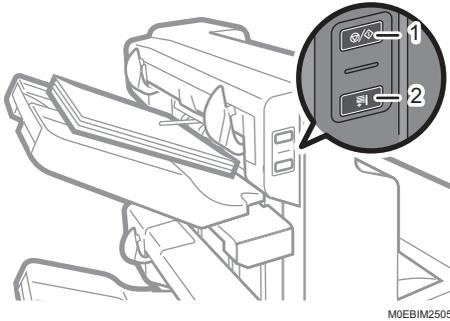
DOCPI1761

Removing Prints from Finisher / Booklet Finisher during Printing or When in Standby State

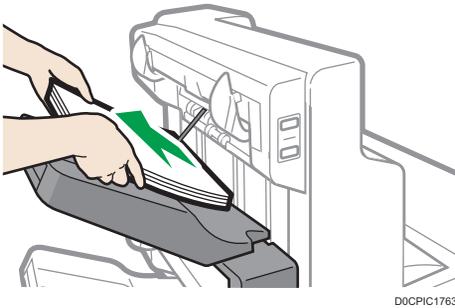
- Notes on removing paper from the shift tray
When removing the paper delivered to the shift tray, if you remove the paper at an angle or towards the front of the machine, the shift tray may rise and catch on the paper. Press the [Suspend / Resume] key before removing the paper.
- Removing paper during printing
When delivering paper to the shift tray with finisher or booklet finisher, the paper may be misaligned depending on the type of printed image. If this happens, suspend printing, remove the paper, and then resume printing.

If delivered to finisher shift tray 1

1. Press the [Suspend / Resume] key of finisher shift tray 1.



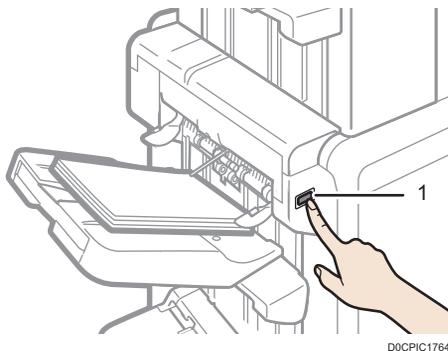
1. [Suspend / Resume] key
 2. [Remove Paper] key
2. Press the [Remove Paper] key.
 3. After the tray is lowered, remove the delivered paper.



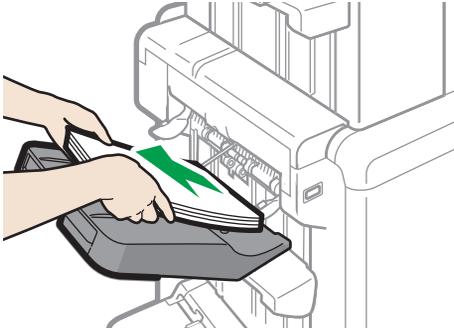
4. Press the [Suspend / Resume] key to restart the print.

If delivered to finisher shift tray 2

1. Press the [Suspend / Resume] key of finisher shift tray 2.



1. [Suspend / Resume] key
2. Remove the stack of paper from the finisher shift tray 2.



DDCPIC1765

3. Press the [Suspend / Resume] key to restart the print.

When Using the Z-fold Function

To use the Z-fold function, you must attach the Z-fold support tray.

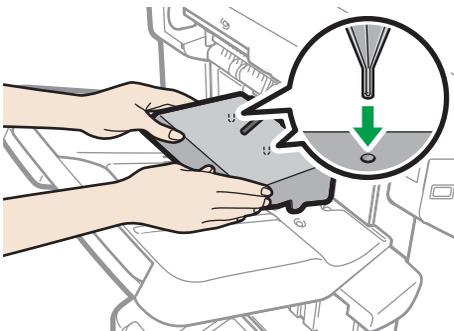
Note

- You cannot attach a Z-fold support tray along with an extension output banner sheet tray attached to the finisher Shift Tray 1.

Finisher/booklet finisher

- Finisher shift tray 1 or 2

Attach the Z-fold support tray by inserting the two protrusions on its underside into the holes on the finisher shift tray 1 or 2.



DDCPIC1766

If you switch the output tray to eject paper while specifying [Enable] on the [Settings] hub ► [Printer Settings] ► [Settings of Output Tray] ► [Shift Tray Settings] ► [Unlimited paper output], and also [Not stacked] in [Stack Jobs] when the Z-fold support tray is attached, the output paper may be stacked on the same output tray.

When Ejecting Thin Paper to Finisher/Booklet Finisher

Attach the thin paper support tray that is provided with the machine on the finisher shift tray when:

- Printing on thin plain paper of 64 g/m² (17 lb. Bond) or less, or thin coated paper less than 80 g/m² (21 lb. Bond) of the size that is 420.1 mm (16.6 inches) or larger (larger than A3).
- Delivering Half Folded paper, or Letter Folded paper thinner than 64g/m² (17 lb. Bond) to the finisher.

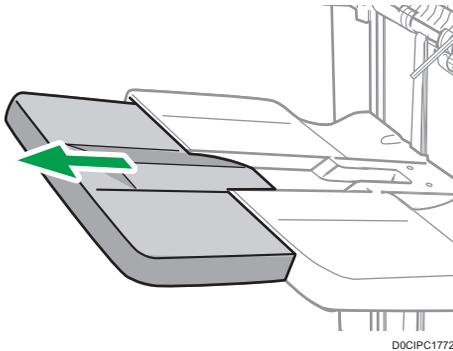
↓ Note

- You cannot attach a thin paper support tray along with an extension output banner sheet tray attached to the finisher Shift Tray 1.

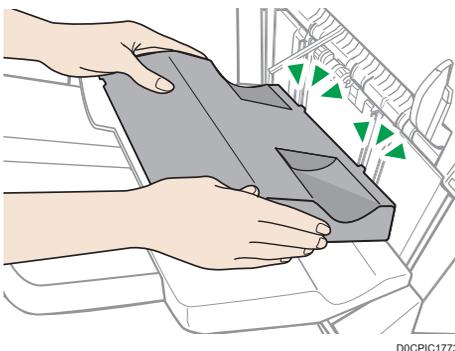
1. Press the [Suspend / Resume] key on the finisher, and then remove the delivered paper.

page 30 "Removing Prints from Finisher /Booklet Finisher during Printing or When in Standby State"

2. Pull out the extension tray on the finisher shift tray 1 or 2.



3. Attach the thin paper support tray by fitting its protrusions in the slots on the finisher.



4. Press the [Suspend / Resume] key to resume printing.

When Ejecting Carbonless Paper Weighing 63 g/m² or Less to Finisher/Booklet Finisher

1

When printing on carbonless paper weighing 63 g/m² (17 lb. Bond) or less, set the banner support tray that is provided with the finisher on the finisher shift tray.

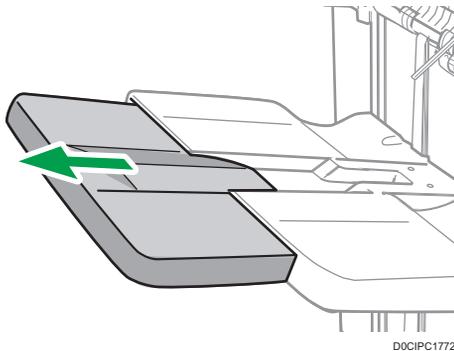
Note

- You cannot attach a banner support tray along with an extension output banner sheet tray attached to the finisher Shift Tray 1.
- Depending on the brand of the paper being used, the paper may be ejected normally even when the banner support tray is not attached.
- When the banner support tray is attached, output sheets may not be stacked neatly.
- If you switch the output tray to eject paper while specifying [Enable] on the [Settings] hub ► [Printer Settings] ► [Settings of Output Tray] ► [Shift Tray Settings] ► [Unlimited paper output], and also [Not stacked] in [Stack Jobs] when the banner support tray is attached, the output paper may be stacked on the same output tray.

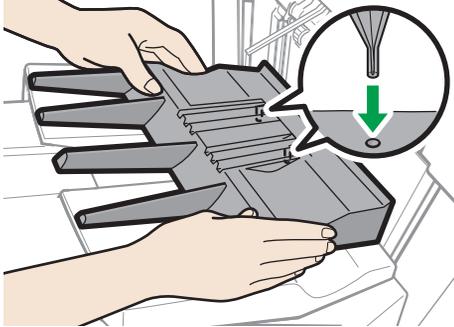
1. Press the [Suspend / Resume] key on finisher or booklet finisher, and then remove the delivered paper.

page 30 "Removing Prints from Finisher /Booklet Finisher during Printing or When in Standby State"

2. Pull out the extension tray on the finisher shift tray 1 or 2.



3. Attach the banner support tray by inserting the protrusions on its underside into the holes on the finisher shift tray 1 or 2.



D0CPIC1774

4. In [Adjustment Settings for Operators], set [0642: Paper Alignment Angle on Shift Tray] to "10 deg".
5. Press the [Suspend/Resume] key to resume printing.

When Ejecting Banner Sheets to Finisher/Booklet Finisher

When ejecting banner sheets to booklet finisher, attach an output banner sheet tray to finisher shift tray 1 or 2. For details about attaching an output banner sheet tray, contact your service representative.

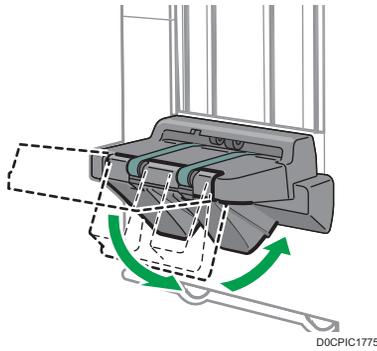
Also set the banner support tray. For details about how to attach the banner support tray, see page 34 "When Ejecting Carbonless Paper Weighing 63 g/m² or Less to Finisher/Booklet Finisher".

↓ Note

- If you switch the output tray to eject paper while specifying [Enable] on the [Settings] hub ► [Printer Settings] ► [Settings of Output Tray] ► [Shift Tray Settings] ► [Unlimited paper output], and also [Not stacked] in [Stack Jobs] when the banner support tray is attached, the output paper may be stacked on the same output tray.

When Ejecting a Large Number of Booklets to the Booklet Tray of Booklet Finisher

When ejecting a large number of booklets to booklet finisher, fold the booklet finisher tray under as shown.

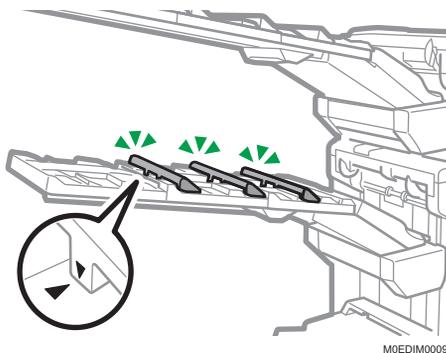


Note

- The finisher booklet tray can be folded in two angles.
- The approximate number of copies that can be ejected when the finisher booklet tray is not folded is as follows:
 - When binding 2–5 sheets: 45 copies
 - When binding 6–10 sheets: 23 copies
 - When binding 11–15 sheets: 15 copies
 - When binding 16–20 sheets: 10 copies
 - When binding 21–30 sheets: 5 copies

When Printing on Extra-long Coated Banner Sheets (700.1 mm, 27.6 Inches or Longer) of Paper Weight 163 g/m² (60 lb. Cover) or Less Using the Extension Output Banner Sheet Tray

Set the jump plates when printing on extra-long coated banner sheets (700.1 mm, 27.6 inches or longer) of paper weight 163 g/m² (60 lb. Cover) or less with extension output banner sheet tray attached. Attach the jump plates aligning the ▲ marks on the tray and the plates.



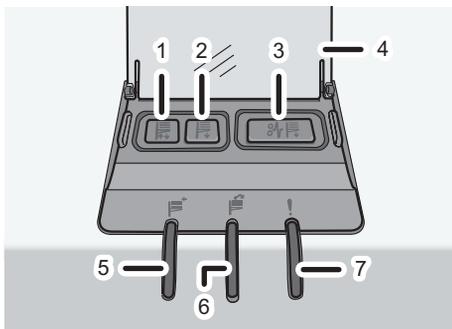
Note

- When removing paper from the tray, be careful not to dislodge the jump plates. The jump plate may come off the machine if your finger gets caught between the extension output banner sheet tray and the plate. If the jump plate comes off the machine, attach it back to its original position.

When Using the High Capacity Stacker

Stacker control panel

The high capacity stacker has a control panel that you can use to lower the stacker tray and confirm the status of the high capacity stacker.



D0CPIC1788

1. Tray Moving Indicator

This flashes blue when the stacker tray is moving up or down. When the stacker tray has moved all the way up and is in the standby state, the indicator turns off. When the stacker tray has moved all the way down, the indicator lights up blue.

2. Lower Tray Button

Press this button to lower the tray. The tray cannot move if the stacker front cover is open.

3. Paper Jam Button

This is lit red when a paper jam occurs. Pressing this button lowers the stacker tray into the paper removal position.

4. Cover of the Stacker Control Panel

5. Stacker Collecting Indicator

This flashes blue when the stacker tray is collecting output paper.

6. Stacker Full Indicator

This is lit red when the stacker tray is full.

7. Error Indicator

This is lit to indicate one or more of the following errors:

- The handcart is not properly set.
- The stacker front cover is open.

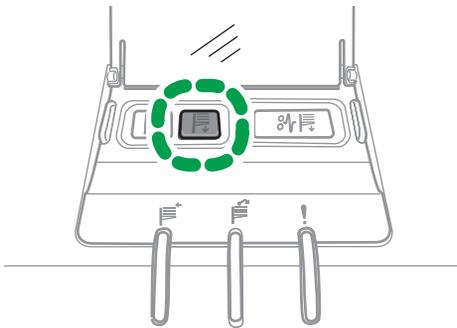
- Jammed paper is still inside the high capacity stacker.

Removing paper

★ Important

- Use the stacker cart for transporting paper from the high capacity stacker. Do not use the stacker cart for any other purpose.
- Do not attempt to get inside the high capacity stacker.
- The paper press might leave a mark on the top of the paper stack. To prevent this, put several sheets of unwanted paper or a protective sheet between the paper press and the paper stack.

1. Open the cover of the stacker control panel, and then press the lower tray button.



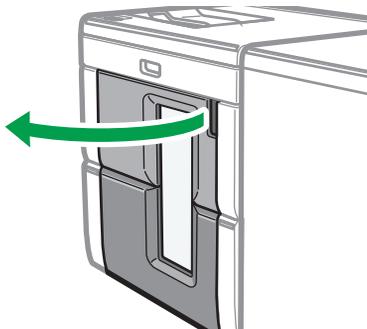
D0CPIC1781

To stop the lowering stacker tray, press the lower tray button again.

To resume lowering the tray, open and close the stacker front cover, and then press the lower tray button again after the tray has risen completely.

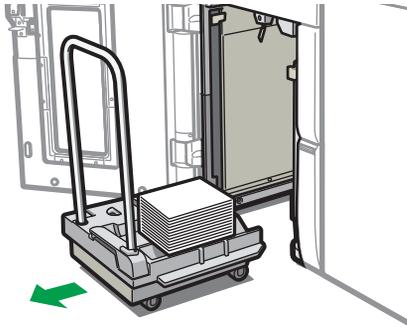
When the stacker tray is fully lowered, the tray moving indicator stops flashing and remains lit.

2. Open the stacker front cover.



D0CPIC1782

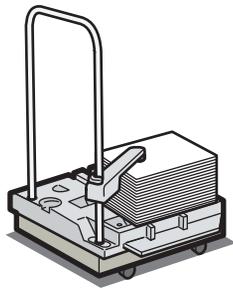
3. Carefully pull out the stacker cart.



D0CPIC1783

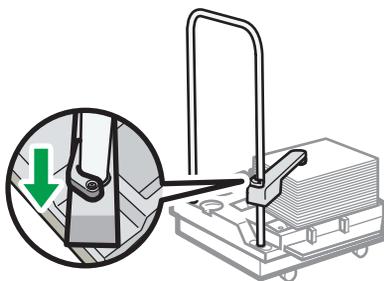
Take care not to let the paper stack topple.

4. Rest the paper press on top of the paper stack.



D0CPIC1789

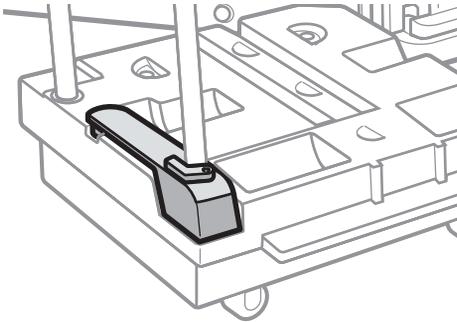
5. Pull the lever on the paper press toward you.



D0CPIC1790

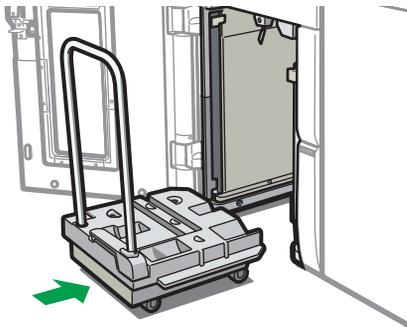
6. Transport the paper to where it is required, and then unload the stacker cart.

7. Return the paper press to its original position.



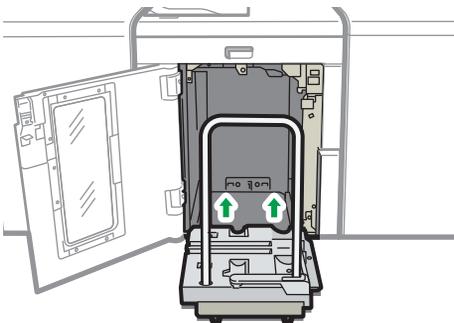
D0CPIC1791

8. Put the stacker cart back inside the high capacity stacker.



D0CPIC1784

Be careful to push the stacker cart in straight, not at an angle.



D0CPIC1785

9. Close the stacker front cover.

The stacker tray begins elevating automatically and the tray moving indicator begins flashing. When the tray moving indicator stops flashing, the tray is fully elevated.

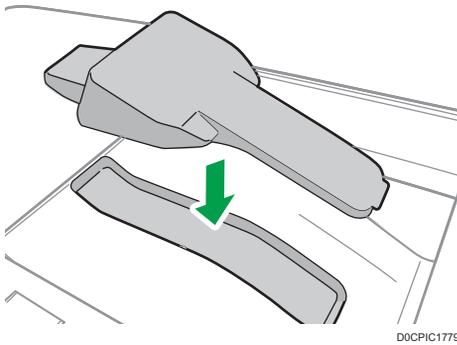
Note

- Before moving the high capacity stacker, be sure to take the stacker cart out of the high capacity stacker.

When Ejecting Thick Paper or Envelopes to the Upper Tray of the High Capacity Stacker

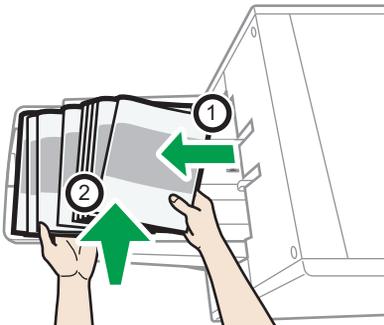
Attach the supplied thick paper support tray when ejecting the following paper to the upper tray of the high capacity stacker:

- Thick paper longer than the length of B4 JIS
- Envelopes that exceed 332 mm (13.1 inches) in length



Precautions Taking Booklets from the Trimmer

- When taking booklets from the trimmer tray, be sure to wait until each booklet has been completely delivered to the tray. If you touch the booklet while it is still being delivered, the sensor may fail to detect the delivery, causing an error.
- When taking booklets from the output tray, take care not to slide the booklets to the right (toward the paper exit). Doing so may bring the cut ends into contact with the output tray belt, causing the paper to curl.
- Take booklets as from the trimmer in the following manner:
 1. Put your hands under the booklets and align their left corners.
 2. Raise the aligned booklets to remove from the tray.



You may also put your hands under the booklets and raise the booklets as they are to take from the tray.

 **Note**

- If any cutting scraps are stuck to the booklet or ejected onto the tray, remove the scraps.

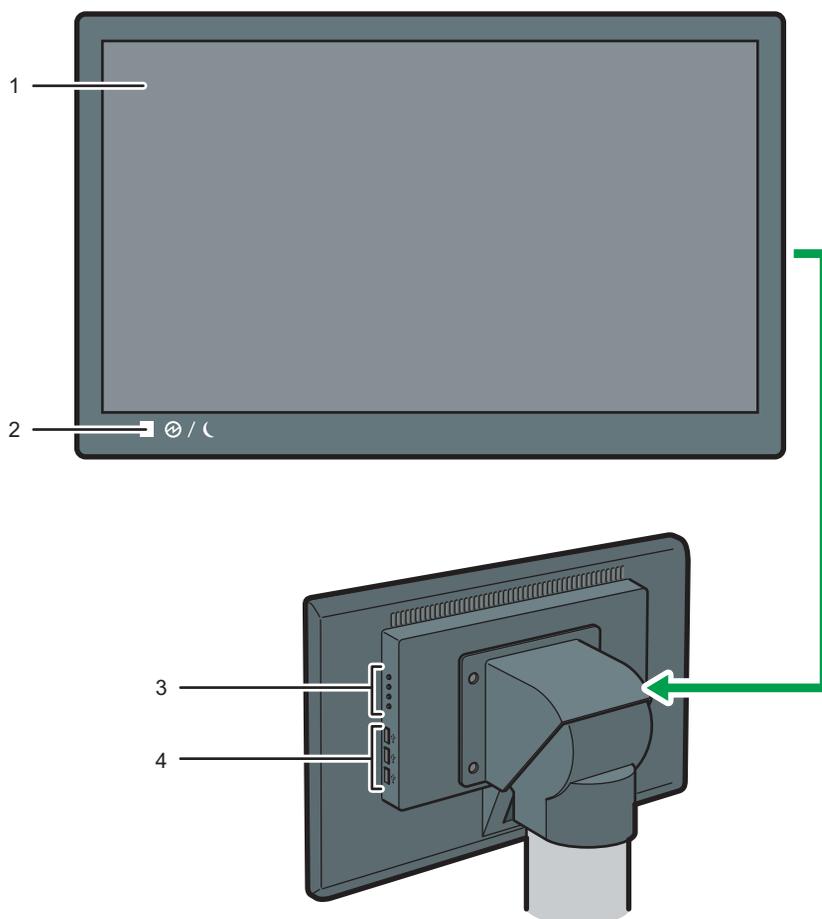
Names and Functions of the Control Panel

The touch panel that displays the operation screen of the machine is referred to as the "Control Panel".

- On the side of the control panel, interfaces for connecting external devices are provided.
- Even when the screen is turned off, the LED indicators in the lower left corner of the control panel show the status of the machine.

1

Touch Panel/Interface



MOEBIM2104

1. Touch panel

This is a touch panel display that features icons, control panel, and keys that allow you to navigate the screens of the various functions and provide you with information about operation status and other messages. For details, see page 58 "Screen Configuration of the [Home] Hub".

2. Main power indicator

The main power indicator goes on when you turn on the main power switch. It flashes when the machine is in Sleep Mode.

3. Display adjustment keys

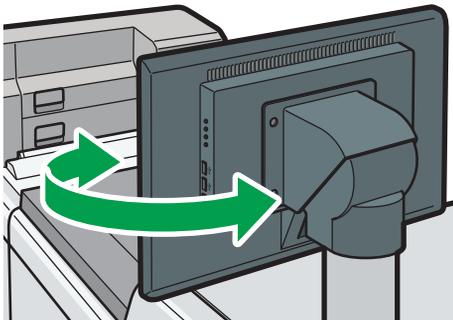
Adjust the screen brightness, contrast, and other settings.

4. USB Host Interface

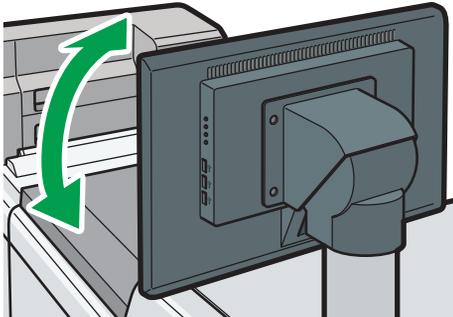
Connect a keyboard, mouse, or other USB device.

↓ Note

- You can adjust the angle of the control panel to improve visibility.



M0EBIM0105



M0EBIM0106

Operation Workflow of Account Management

To remove the usage restrictions on the machine and use its various functions, a user account must be created for each operator.

In the settings for the user account, you can assign a role to each operator, and specify the type of functions that is available in the role.

You can select a role from the pre-defined roles that are available in the factory default setting. Also, you create new roles and specify the functions available in each role to match your operating environment.

1. Create a role

page 46 "Create a Role for the User"

2. Create a user account

page 51 "Registering/Modifying/Deleting a User Account"

Create a Role for the User

Create a new role to specify the functions to allow on the user account.

- You do not need to create a new role when using only the roles that are pre-defined in the default setting.
- In the default setting, two pre-defined roles are available: Operator and Administrator. The pre-defined roles cannot be deleted.
- You can register up to 200 roles including 6 pre-defined roles*.
- 4 "Operation sets" are available for use as templates for assigning various functions easily when you create a role.

* Pre-defined users other than Operator and Administrator, and the pre-defined roles, do not appear in normal operation.

The functions available to each pre-defined user

Pre-defined user	Pre-defined role	Available printer
Operator	Operator	All printers that are registered on the UI server
Administrator	Administrator	

Functions Assigned to the Operation Set

One of the following functions is assigned to each operation set.

Function	Operation Set Name			
	Operator	Administrator (UI server)*	Administrator (printer)*	Administrator
General Settings	-	○	○	○
Authentication Settings	-	○	-	○
Email Sending Settings	-	○	-	○
Account Management	-	○	-	○
Printer Management	-	○	-	○
Auto Logout Settings	-	○	○	○

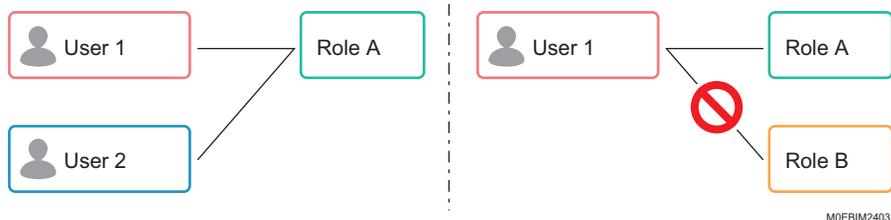
Function	Operation Set Name			
	Operator	Administrator (UI server) *	Administrator (printer) *	Administrator
Media ID Unit Settings	-	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Security settings: User Lockout Policy	-	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Security settings: Password Policy	-	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Security settings: Device certificate settings	-	-	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Security settings: Audit log settings	-	-	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Security settings: Customer engineer login settings	-	-	-	<input type="radio"/>
Backup/Restore	-	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Firmware Update	-	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Log Acquisition	-	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Output Device Info	-	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Power Management	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Version Information	-	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Installed Options List	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
In/Output Tray Priority	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Settings of Output Tray	-	-	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Adjust Fold Position	-	-	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

Function	Operation Set Name			
	Operator	Administrator (UI server) *	Administrator (printer) *	Administrator
Perfect Binder Settings	-	-	○	○
Manage Custom Paper Sizes	-	-	○	○
Unit Display Switching	-	○	○	○
Manage Settings Display	-	-	○	○
Date & Time Settings	-	-	○	○
Setting of Parts Maintenance Task Start Time	-	-	○	○
Energy Saver Settings	-	-	○	○
Weekly Timer	-	-	○	○
Network Settings	-	-	○	○
Proxy Settings	-	-	○	○
DFE Management	-	-	○	○
DFE Remote Desktop Connection Settings	-	-	○	○
Notification Sound	-	-	○	○
External Keyboard Settings	-	-	○	○
Cartridge Unlock Setting	-	-	○	○
Clear Settings	-	○	○	○
Inquiry	○	○	○	○

Function	Operation Set Name			
	Operator	Administrator (UI server)*	Administrator (printer)*	Administrator
Counter	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Administrator Counter	-	-	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Printer Adjustment	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Edit Task	-	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Implement Task	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Edit a schedule	-	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
TeamViewer	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Maintenance Mode	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Remote Diagnostics	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

* You can specify the role to assign from [Operation set] when assigning a role to a user.

Only one role can be assigned to a user account.



MOEBIM2403

Registering/Modifying/Deleting a Role for a User

1. Log in to the machine using a user account with a role that can change the account management settings.

See page 53 "Logging In".

2. Press **[F4]**.
3. Press **[Account Management]** in **[System Settings]**.

4. Press [Add] in [Role].



To modify a registered role, select a role, and then press [Edit].

To delete a registered role, select a role, press [Delete], and then press [OK].

5. Specify the functions, printers, and other items to make available for the role.

Configure and register the following items:

- Role name: Specify the name to use for identifying the role. The name cannot be change after the role is registered.
 - Specify a name that is unique on the machine, using up to 30 UTF-8 characters (no blanks allowed).
- Operation set: Specify an operation set. Select the operation set that comes the closest to the role as a template of the function to be assigned, and then add or delete the function to enable in [Functions].

page 46 "Functions Assigned to the Operation Set"
- Functions: Specify the functions to allow usage. Multiple items can be selected simultaneously.
- Printer: Specify the printer to allow usage on the role among the printers registered on the UI server. Multiple items can be selected simultaneously.
 - Default: **All registered printers**

6. Press [OK].

Registering/Modifying/Deleting a User Account

1

Enter the information required for authentication when creating a user account.

- In the default setting, two pre-defined users are available: operator and administrator. The pre-defined users cannot be deleted.
- You can register up to 1,000 user accounts including 6 pre-defined users*.
- * Pre-defined users other than Operator and Administrator do not appear in normal operation.

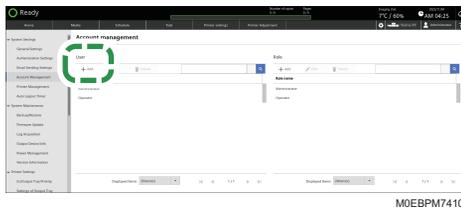
1. Log in to the machine using a user account with a role that can change the account management settings.

See page 53 "Logging In".

2. Press [F5].

3. Press [Account Management] in [System Settings].

4. Press [Add] in [User].



To modify a registered user, select a user, and then press [Edit].

To delete a registered use, specify the account to delete, and then press [Delete].

5. Specify the account information.

Configure and register the following items:

- User name: Enter the user name to use when logging into the machine. The name cannot be changed afterward.
 - Specify a name that is unique on the machine, using up to 30 UTF-8 characters (no blanks allowed).
- Role: Specify the role to assign on the selected user account. The role of the pre-defined users cannot be changed.
 - Default: **Operator**
- Password/Confirmation Password: Enter a password to use when logging in to the machine.
 - Up to 128 alphanumeric characters only
- Email: Specify the destination e-mail address to which to send the temporary password using up to 256 characters.

- Language: Use the keys on the right to set the priority of the on-screen languages for each account.
 - Default: **English**

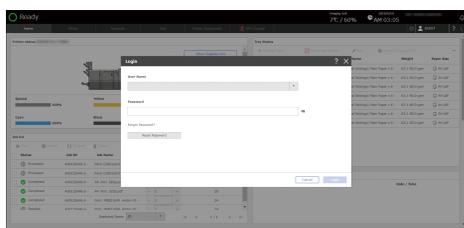
1

6. Press [OK].

Logging In

To remove restrictions applied to the machine usage and use its various functions, log in to the machine first, and then begin operations.

On the operation screen of the machine, enter the user name and password before starting operation.



To prevent use of the machine by an unauthorized person, always log out when you have finished using the machine. The name of the logged-in user is displayed on the navigation bar while the user is logged into the machine.

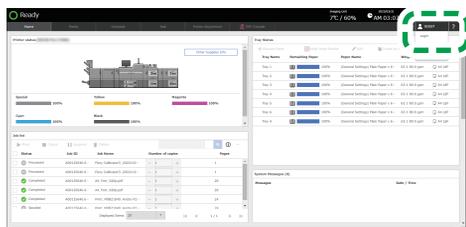
Note

- The logged-in user is automatically logged out when the user performs no operation on the machine for a certain period of time. The default automatic logout time is set to three minutes. You can change the time to wait before a user is logged out automatically, or disable this feature in [Auto Logout Timer] under [System Settings].
- See "System Settings", User Guide.

Logging In by Entering the User Name and Password

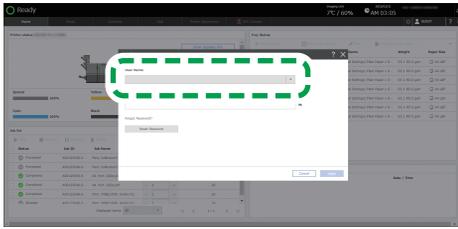
1. Press the user name, and then press [Login].

When logging into the operation screen of the machine from a client computer or smart device, enter the IP address of the operation screen of the machine ([https://\(IP address of the machine\):8080/dist](https://(IP address of the machine):8080/dist)) in the address bar of a web browser to display the operation screen before you start operating the machine remotely.



M0EBPM7101

2. Enter the login user name under [User Name].



MOEBPM7102

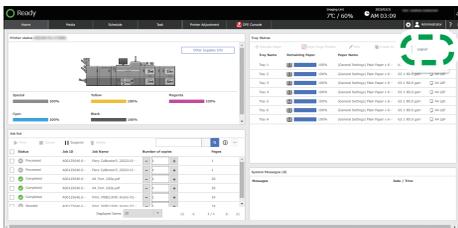
You can also select a registered user from the drop-down menu.

3. Enter the password under [Password].

4. Press [Login].

Note

- To log out from the machine, press the user name, and then press [Logout].



MOEBPM7103

Changing the Login Password

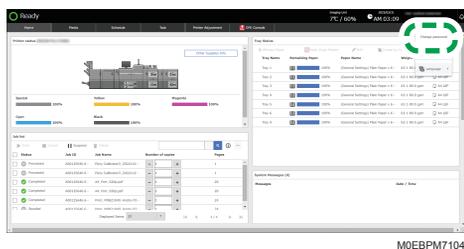
To prevent unauthorized use of the machine, change the password regularly.

You can use up to 128 alphanumeric characters in the password. Do not use a string that can be easily guessed.

- Pay attention to the capitalization when you enter alphabetic characters, and enter the string correctly.
- The symbols that you can use in a password are as follows:
(space) ! " # \$ % & ' () * + , - . / : ; < = > ? @ [\] ^ _ ` { | } ~

1. Log in to the machine.

2. Press the user name, and press [Change password].



MOEBPM7104

3. Enter "Current Password", "New password", and "Confirm New Password".

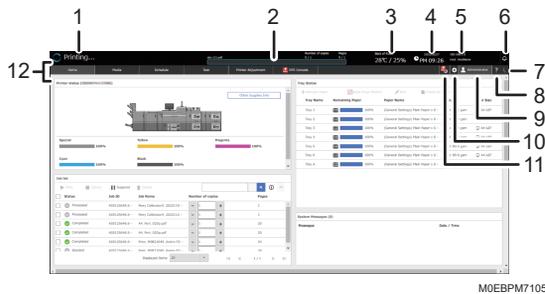
4. Press [OK].

Note

- If you forget your password, press [Reset Password] on the login screen to issue a temporary password for the specified user. The temporary password is sent to the e-mail address that is registered in the account information. Log in to the account using the temporary password, and change the password.
 - The temporary password is disabled 1 hour after it has been issued. Change it as soon as possible.
 - To issue a temporary password, the machine must be configured to send e-mail in [Email Sending Settings].
 - See "Configuring the Settings to Send E-mails from the Machine", User Guide.

Screen Configuration of the Navigation Bar

The navigation bar is displayed in the upper part of the operation screen on the control panel at all times.



M0EBPM7105

1. Printer Status

Displays the status of the machine.

The icon lights up in blue when the machine is warming up, printing a page, or performing the automatic print head cleaning process. The icon lights up in red when an error occurs.

2. Progress Bar

Shows the progress of the job that is currently being processed.

3. Temperature and Humidity Display

Displays the temperature and humidity in the room where the machine is placed.

4. Clock

5. IP Address

Displays the hostname and IP address of the machine.

6. Alert Icon

Displayed when there is a message from the system. You can read the message content on the [System Messages] tile in the [Home] hub. Also, the notification screen is displayed when a malfunction occurs on the machine, and the user needs to be notified of the error details or how to resolve the problem.

7. (Energy Saver Key)*

Press this when you want the machine to enter Energy Saving mode.

page 15 "Energy Saving Mode"

8. (Help, Enter Maintenance Mode*, TeamViewer*, Remote Diagnostics)

- Help

Displays the built-in HTML manual of the machine.
- Enter Maintenance Mode*

Use this to perform a simple maintenance on the machine. You can browse the manual and troubleshooting on the control panel of the machine.
- TeamViewer*

Use this to get a remote support from your call center.

- Remote Diagnostics

Displays the e-mail sending screen for requesting remote management service.

It is displayed only when the remote management service is installed, and user calls are enabled.

9. User Name display

Displays the user name. Press this to log in or log out from the machine, change the password, or select the language to use.

10. (Settings)

You can configure the items displayed on the control panel, specify the machine behavior, create, or edit the timer, configure the network, and specify other system-wide settings of the machine.

page 68 "Screen Configuration of the [Settings] Hub"

11. (Fiery Settings) *

The Fiery Settings hub displays the setting items of the Fiery controller that is connected to the machine.

page 66 "Using the Fiery Settings Hub"

12. Switch Hub

Press this to switch the screen that is displayed under the navigation bar.

* This item is displayed on the control panel of the machine only.

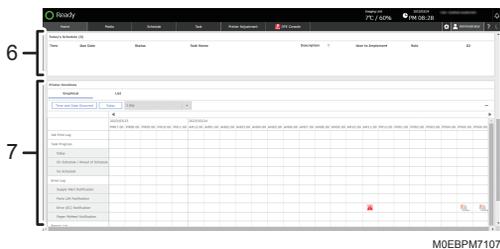
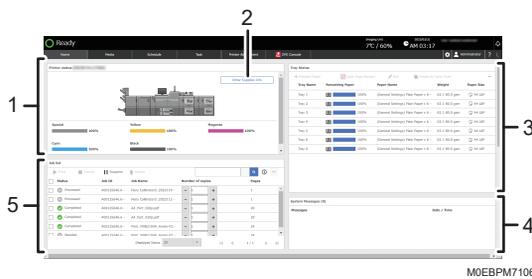
Screen Configuration of the [Home] Hub

The [Home] hub is displayed in the factory default setting when you turn on the power of the machine.

The [Home] hub shows the status of the printer and its trays, system messages, job list, and other information.

★ Important

- Do not apply strong impact or force to the screen, or it may be damaged. Maximum force allowable is approx. 30N (approx. 3 kgf). (N = Newton, kgf = Kilogram force. 1 kgf = 9.8N.)



1. [Printer status] tile

Shows the printer status including the remaining amount of toner and paper, and other information.

When the paper runs out or a paper jam occurs, the corresponding part is displayed in red.

2. Other Supplies Info

Displays the supplies that require replacement or replenishment. It also displays the available space or remaining amount of a consumable. Press [Inquiry] to display the serial number and contact information.

3. [Tray Status] tile

Shows the list of trays, and the information and remaining amount of the paper (medium) that is loaded on each tray.

You can specify a tray with paper loaded, change the paper settings, adjust the position of printed images, and change other settings.

4. [System Messages] tile

Displays the messages sent from the system.

Select an item in the list to view its detailed information.

5. [Job list] tile

Displays the job queue of the DFE.

Search for a job to display. To display the thumbnail image and details of a job, select the job, and press the [⊙] icon.

You can cancel, pause, delete, or proceed with printing the job.

6. [Today's Schedule] tile

Displays the working schedule of the current day that is assigned to the user.

7. [Printer timelines] tile

Shows the event history including system configuration, maintenance, and errors.

You can display the event log of the specified date and time, or change the items to display.

↓ Note

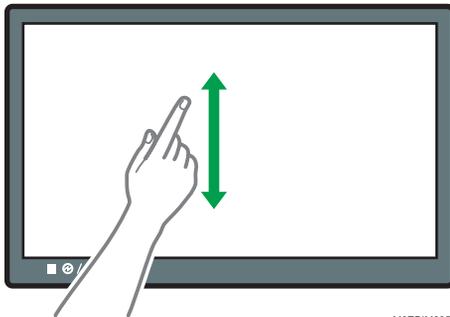
- You can connect to the control panel of the machine using a web browser on the client computer, and configure and operate the machine remotely. Enter "https://(IP address of the machine) : 8080/dist" in the address bar of the web browser, and then press the Enter key to display the screen to operate the control panel of the machine.

Intuitive Screen Operation Using Fingertips

On each screen of the control panel, you can perform the following operation by touching the screen with your fingertips.

Flick (Scrolling the Screen)

Flick the screen up or down to scroll through the screens.

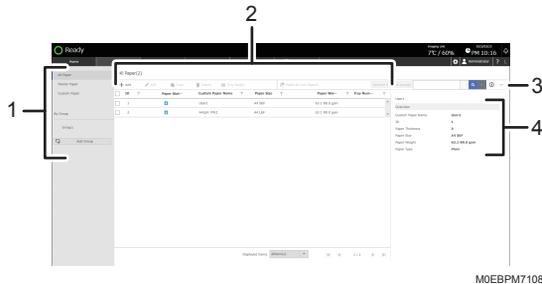


MOEBIM0052

Screen Configuration of the [Media] Hub

Press [Media] on the navigation bar to display [Media] hub.

You can configure and manage the paper trays and the paper that is loaded in each tray.



M0EBPM7108

1. List of Items

Displays the items in the paper settings.

- [All Paper]
Information of all registered paper is displayed on the registered paper list.
- [Master Paper]
Information of all registered master paper is displayed on the registered paper list.
- [Custom Paper]
Information of all registered custom paper is displayed on the registered paper list.
- [By Group]
Information of all paper that is registered to a group is displayed on the registered paper list. Press [Add Group] to create a new group of paper.

2. List of Registered Paper

Displays the list of the registered paper information. You can register, modify, copy, or delete paper information. You can register the setting that is adjusted for each paper, and apply the appropriate setting for the selected paper when printing.

See page 135 "Registering a Custom Paper".

You can assign a registered paper setting to a specific paper tray.

See page 154 "Changing Tray Paper Settings".

You can also search for specific paper information by a user-specified paper name, paper size, and other paper attributes.

3. Other Settings (***)

You can change the title of the line to be displayed on the list of registered paper, or print the list of paper setting items. You can also import and export the paper settings.

See page 134 "How to Use the [Media] Hub".

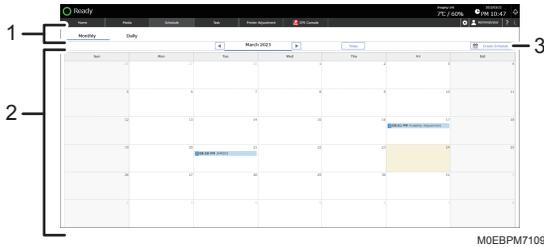
4. Paper Information

Displays an overview, user-specified paper name, paper information ID, and other registered information of paper that you specify on the list of registered paper.

Screen Configuration of [Schedule] Hub

Press [Schedule] on the navigation bar to display [Schedule] hub.

You can view or create working schedules such as printing or performing maintenance on the machine.



1. Monthly/Daily

Switches the display style of schedules between monthly (calendar view) and daily (list view).

2. Schedule

Displays Task schedules (Operational Task: 📅 Maintenance Task: ⚙️).

Press a scheduled task to display its details.

- [Implement]
 - Performs the scheduled task immediately.
- [Change Scheduled Date]
 - Change the date and time the task is scheduled to be performed.
- [Delete]
 - Deletes a scheduled task.

3. [Create Schedule]

Specify a date and time to create a new task. You can specify to repeat a task and receive a notification of a task. You can also specify the user to perform the task.

Performing a Scheduled Task

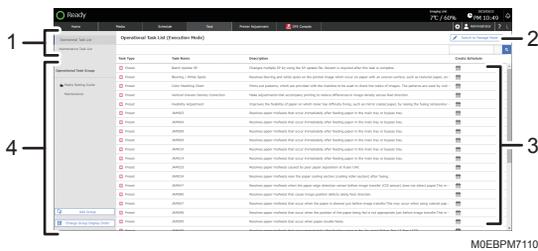
The "Schedule Notification" screen appears when it is time to start a task. Press [Implement Task] to perform the task.

Screen Configuration of the [Task] Hub

Press [Task] on the navigation bar to display [Task] hub.

Displays the list of tasks for the logged-in user. Tasks such as the adjusting or cleaning the machine, or replacing a consumable can be grouped by category or item.

Tasks for adjusting the machine are referred to as "Operational Task", and tasks for cleaning the machine or replacing consumables are referred to as "Maintenance Task".

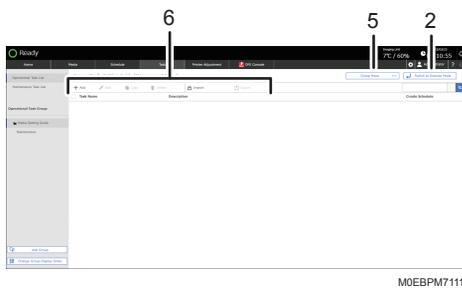


Operational Task Group

Execution Mode



Management Mode



1. Operational Task List/Maintenance Task List

Switches between different task types to display.

2. [Switch to Execute Mode]/[Switch to Manage Mode]

Switches between the privileges to manage tasks.

- Execution Mode

You can create or execute tasks.

- Management Mode

In addition to creating and executing a task, you can also add, edit, copy, delete, or import/export an "Operation Task".

3. Display Task Details

Displays a registered task. Specify the task to perform, and then follow the instructions that appear on the screen to perform the task. You can also print test charts using the adjustment value specified in the task.

4. Operational Task Group

You can group operation tasks according to the purpose or type of task.

- Operational Task Group
Displays the operation task groups that you created. The "Media Setting Guide" and "Maintenance" groups are registered in the factory default setting.
- [Add Group]
Enter the group name, and then press [OK].
You cannot add the same group name to the same hierarchy.
- [Change Group Display Order]
Changes the order of the group that appears in an operational task group.

5. [Group Menu]

You can add, delete, or edit a group. Select an item from the following in the menu:

- Add Subgroup to Group
- Edit Group Name
- Delete Group
- Add Task to Group
- Delete Task from Group

6. Create, Edit, Import/Export an "Operation Task"

- [Add]
- [Edit]
- [Copy]
- [Delete]

In the manage mode, you can create an operation task as a new one or one that is based on a template, enter the task name, and then add or edit the task.

- [Export]
Exports the operational task that you created.
 - When exporting a task from the control panel of the machine: the exported task is stored on the USB memory connected to the USB host interface.
 - When exporting from a client computer: you can specify any accessible destination to store the exported task.
 - You can enter up to 50 characters (alphanumeric characters and some symbols) from the control panel as the file name.
- [Import]

Imports operational tasks. Specify one or more operational tasks in a file to import.

You can import only the file that is exported from the machine.

- When importing a task onto the control panel of the machine: import a task from the USB memory device connected to the USB host interface.
- When importing to a client computer: you can import a task from any accessible storage device.
- If the total number of tasks, including tasks to be imported, exceeds 1,000, importing is aborted. Tasks are imported in the order in the task list displayed.
- When importing a task of the same name, you can overwrite the existing task, save the imported task under a new name, or cancel importing.

 **Note**

- You may not be able to recover the original setting values when you cancel execution of a task. If this occurs, wait for a while, or save and terminate the task as is.
- If a setting item that cannot be applied to the paper size that is selected in a task related to the paper settings, the corresponding paper setting becomes invisible and cannot be specified.
- If another user executes a task while you are editing it, the edited setting cannot be saved. Only the task name can be changed while the task is being executed.

Understanding the [DFE Console] Hub

Press  [DFE Console] on the navigation bar to connect to the DFE that is connected to the network remotely.

For details, see "Connecting to the Fiery Controller Remotely from the Control Panel", User Guide.

Note

- You cannot display the  [DFE Console] when you access the control panel from a client computer.

Using the Fiery Settings Hub

Press  on the navigation bar to display the Fiery Settings hub.

The Fiery Settings hub displays the setting items of the Fiery controller that is connected to the machine. On the hub, the frequently used print settings appear directly, allowing you to change the settings of a job without having you connect remotely to the DFE.

Each setting item is grouped by category in the menu tree on the left side of the screen. First, select a category of the setting you want to change, and then make changes to each item in the setting.

Categories of Setting Items

The menu tree in the left part of the screen shows various information of the Fiery controller including its system information, network settings, frequently used print settings, and other setting items.

- Fiery

Shows the server name, version and other system information, and IP address of the Fiery controller. You can also shutdown, restart, and initialize the Fiery controller, or erase the job logs.

For details, see the followings:

See "Fiery", User Guide.

- Setup

Shows the system settings of the Fiery controller. To obtain information from the Fiery controller, change the network, security, and other settings to match the environment where you use the Fiery controller.

For details, see the followings:

See "Setup", User Guide.

- Other Setting Categories

Shows the items in the print settings of the Fiery controller.

The Items that appear vary depending on your environment.

Details of Setting Items

The detailed information of a setting item appears when you press a category name in the menu tree in the left part of the screen,

To apply the change you made on a setting, restart the Fiery controller. The restart button continues to appear in the upper right corner of the screen even after you navigate to a different item category if you change even one of the settings.

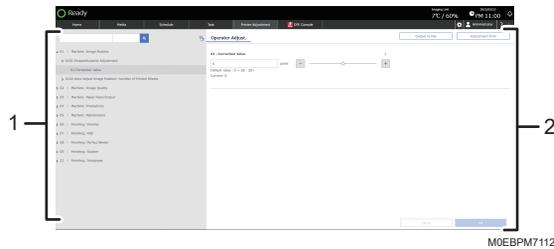
When you make any changes to the settings, always restart the Fiery controller before initiating a print process.

Screen Configuration of [Printer Adjustment] Hub

1

Press [Printer Adjustment] on the navigation bar to display [Printer Adjustment] hub.

You can adjust the image position and quality in addition to the various settings of the printer and other optional devices.



1. Adjustment Items List

Displays the list of adjustment items.

2. Adjustment Details

You can view the detail of the selected adjustment item, and adjust the printer.

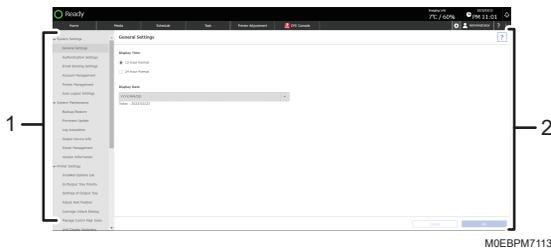
See page 197 "How to Use the "Operator Adjust." Screen".

Screen Configuration of the [Settings] Hub

1

Press  on the navigation bar to display [Settings] hub.

You can configure the items displayed on the control panel, specify the machine behavior, create, or edit the timer, configure the network, and specify other system-wide settings of the machine.



1. List of Setting Items

Displays the system-wide setting items.

2. Setting Details

You can view the detail of the selected setting item, and adjust the setting.

See "System Settings", User Guide.

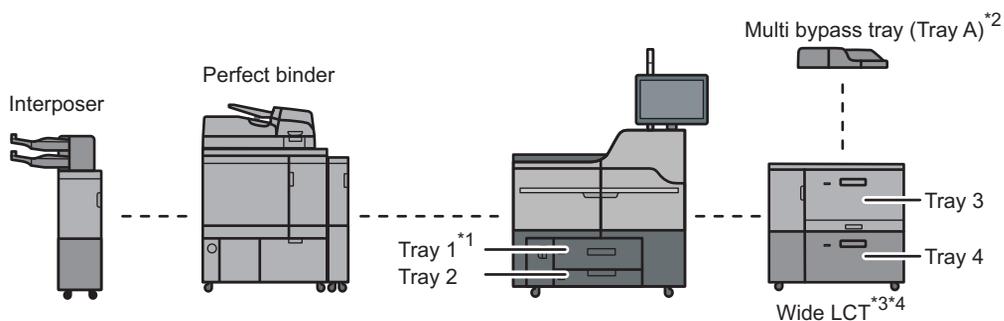
2. Paper Specifications and Adding Paper

Loading Paper into the Paper Tray

The method of loading paper varies for each tray type.

⚠ CAUTION

- When pulling out the paper tray, do not pull it out swiftly. The tray may fall and cause injury.
- When replacing paper or removing jammed paper, make sure not to trap or injure your fingers.



MOEBIM2107

*1 The A3/11 × 17 tray unit can be attached.

*2 The banner sheet tray of multi bypass tray (Tray A) can be attached.

*3 You can attach LCT banner sheet tray on the topmost tray among trays 3, 5, and 7.

*4 You can attach Extension LCT banner sheet tray on the topmost tray among trays 3, 5, and 7.

- Even if paper is loaded as described above, normal operations and print quality might still not be possible, depending on the paper type.
- When loading 40.0–52.3 g/m² (11.0 lb. Bond–14.0 lb. Bond) paper into paper trays or loading translucent paper into the wide LCT or the multi bypass tray (Tray A), always use long grain paper.
- Before loading paper into a tray, check the paper size and type that can be loaded in the tray, and confirm the paper size that is automatically detected.
See page 101 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types".
- When loading paper of a size that is not automatically detected, specify the paper size in the paper settings on the [Media] hub.

page 98 "Specifying the Paper Size That Is Not Automatically Detected"

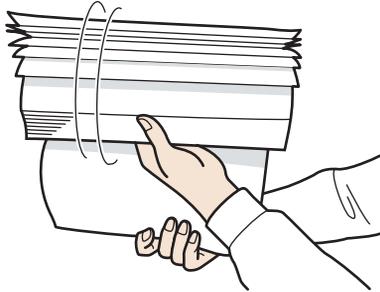
- Check the paper setting before printing. If the paper differs from the paper setting, a mismatch error will occur when you print.
- While printing, do not change the paper size of the tray that is specified as the destination.
- If the surface of the paper is dusty, white spots might appear on prints. To remove dust, fan the paper thoroughly.
- Straighten curled or warped paper before loading.
- If long grain paper does not uncurl properly, try short grain paper instead.
- To prevent more than one sheet of paper being fed together in a bundle, fan the sheets thoroughly before setting them on the paper tray. If more than one sheet of paper is fed together at a time, it may cause a paper jam.
- If the sheets of paper are in close contact with each other, causing a multi feed to occur, remove the paper from the tray, fan the paper thoroughly, and then load it on the tray again.
- When loading paper on a tray which has a few sheets of paper, multiple sheets of paper may be fed at once from the tray. Take out all sheets, fan the sheets, and then load them again.
- When you load paper into the paper tray for the first time or when you change the type of paper in the paper tray, be sure to specify the appropriate paper settings on the [Media] hub or in the [Tray Status] tile of the [Home] hub.
See page 154 "Changing Tray Paper Settings".
- You may hear the sound of rubbing paper. This is not a malfunction.
- Do not stack paper over the limit mark on the paper tray.

Fanning the Paper

★ Important

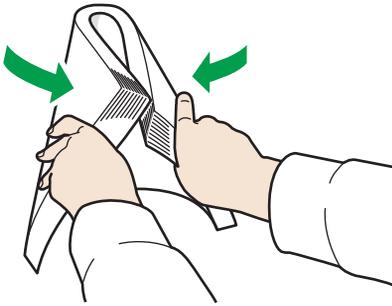
- If you load coated paper, label paper, transparencies, or thick paper of 150.1– 470.0 g/m² (55.1 lb. Cover–172 lb. Cover), it is important that you fan the sheets thoroughly. Misfeeds may occur if paper is not fanned thoroughly. If the machine feeds several sheets of paper together or it does not feed paper, fan paper and load it again.

1. Fan the stack of paper to load.

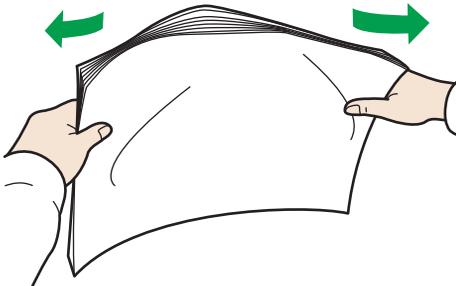


D0CMIC1421

2. Holding its shorter ends, flex the stack back and forth to create space between the sheets. Repeat this several times.

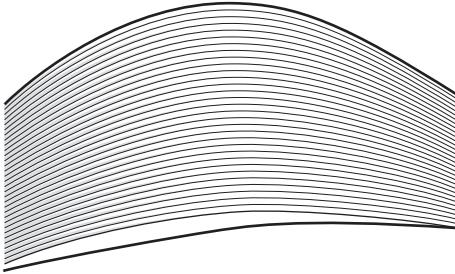


D0CMIC1422



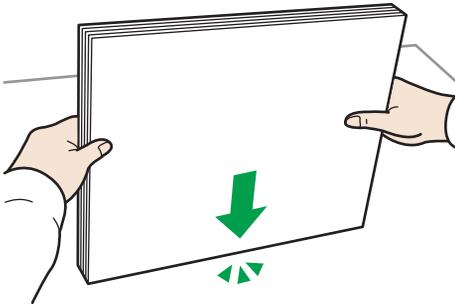
D0CMIC1423

3. Make sure there is space between the sheets.



D0CMIC1424

4. Hold the stack of paper in both hands and tap the long and short edges of the paper against a flat surface to align them.



D0CMIC1425

Loading Paper into Tray 1

 **Region A** (mainly Europe and Asia)

Tray 1 can hold A4 paper only. If you want to print on $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$ paper from Tray 1, contact your service representative.

 **Region B** (mainly North America)

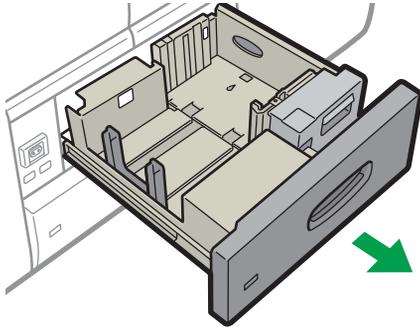
Tray 1 can hold $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$ paper only. If you want to print on A4 paper from Tray 1, contact your service representative.

 **Important**

- When paper loaded in the right side of Tray 1 runs out, paper on the left is automatically shifted to the right. Do not pull out Tray 1 while the tray is moving paper; wait until sounds stop coming from the tray.
- If Tray 1 is closed too quickly, the paper in the tray may force the right tray's fence to slip out of place. If the paper misfeeds because of this, open the tray, adjust the fence, and close the tray slowly.

- For the right stack, align the right edge of the paper with the right edge of the tray. For the left stack, align the left edge of the paper to the left edge of the tray.

1. Carefully pull out the paper tray until it stops.

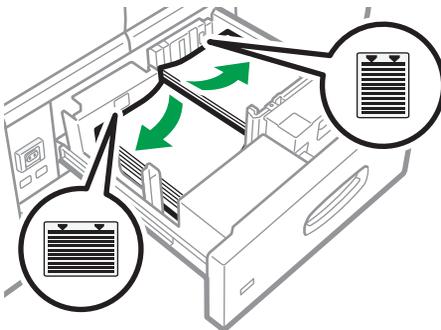


MOEBIM2108

2. Square the paper and load it print side down.

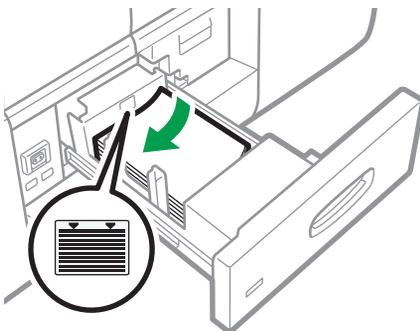
Do not stack paper over the limit mark.

- Whole tray pulled out



MOEBIM0109

- Left half of the tray pulled out



MOEBIM0110

3. Carefully push the paper tray fully in.

Note

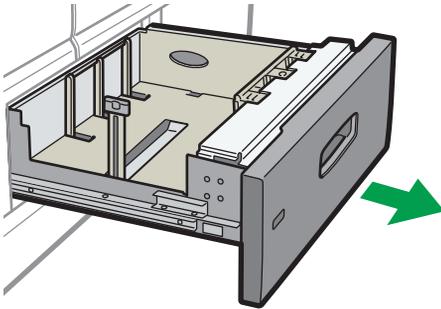
- You can load paper even if Tray 1 is in use. It is okay to pull out the left half of the tray while Tray 1 is in use.

Loading Paper into the A3/11 × 17 Tray Unit

A3/11 × 17 tray unit can hold 11 × 17 paper only. If you want to print on A3, A4, B4 JIS, 8 1/2 × 14, or 8 1/2 × 11, contact your service representative.

Important

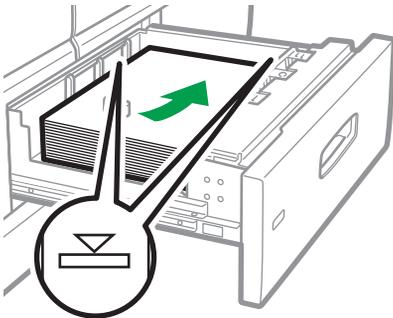
- Check the paper edges are aligned at the right side.
1. Check that paper in the paper tray is not being used, and then pull the tray carefully out until it stops.



M0EBIM2111

2. Square the paper and load it print side down.

Do not stack paper over the limit mark.



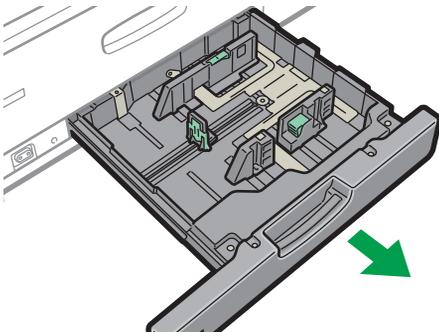
M0EBIM0112

3. Carefully push the paper tray fully in.

Loading Paper into Tray 2

★ Important

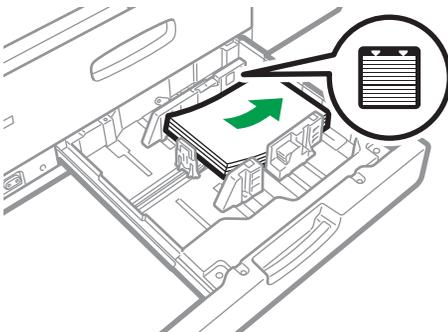
- Check the paper edges are aligned at the right side.
 - If a paper tray is pushed vigorously when putting it back into place, the position of the tray's fences may slip out of place.
 - When loading a low number of sheets, be sure not to squeeze the fences in too tightly. If the fences are squeezed too tightly against the paper, the edges may crease, the paper may misfeed, or if it weighs between 52.3–63.0g/m² (14.0–16.9 lb. Bond), it may wrinkle.
1. Check that paper in the paper tray is not being used, and then pull the tray carefully out until it stops.



M0EBIM2113

2. Square the paper and load it print side down.

Do not stack paper over the limit mark.



M0EBIM0114

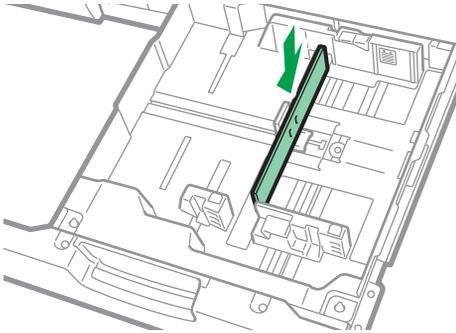
3. Carefully push the paper tray fully in.

↓ Note

- Various sizes of paper can be loaded in Tray 2 by adjusting the positions of fences.

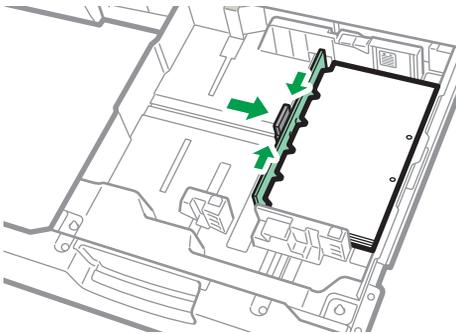
Loading Tab Stock into Tray 2

- When loading tab stock, always use the tab sheet holder.



M0EBIM2115

- Load tab stock so that the side with the tab faces the tab sheet holder.
- When loading tab stock, adjust the fence position so that the tab sheet holder will fit the tab stock.



M0EBIM2116

Loading Paper into the Multi Bypass Tray (Tray A)

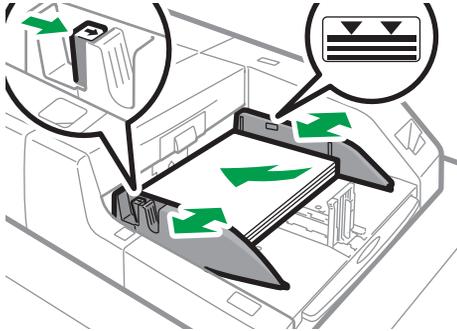
Use the multi bypass tray (Tray A) to use transparencies, translucent paper, and paper that cannot be loaded in the paper trays.

★ Important

- The maximum number of sheets you can load at the same time depends on paper type. Do not stack paper over the limit mark. For the maximum number of sheets you can load, see below.
- See page 101 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types".
- Check the paper edges are aligned at the left side.
- When loading a low number of sheets, be sure not to squeeze the fences in too tightly. If the fences are squeezed too tightly against the paper, the edges may crease, the paper may misfeed, or if it weighs between 52.3–63.0 g/m² (14.0–16.9 lb. Bond), it may wrinkle.

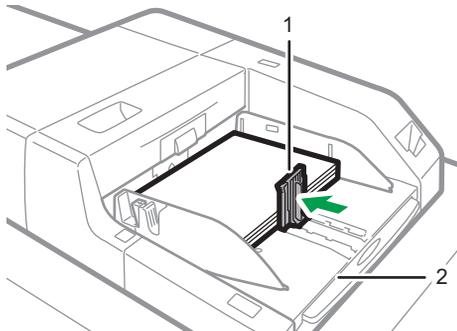
1. Set the fences to the paper, and then square the paper and load it print side up.

Do not stack paper over the limit mark.



M0EBIM2117

2. Set the fence.

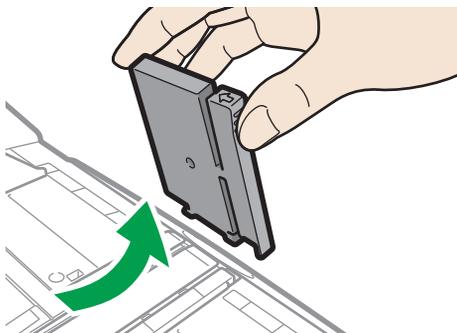


M0EBIM2118

1. Fence

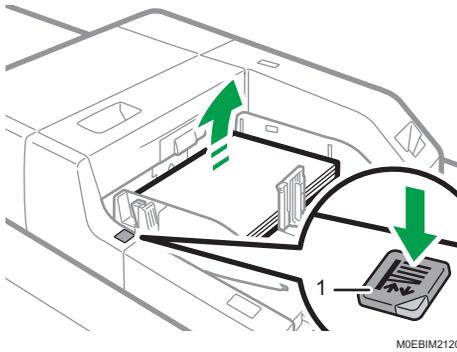
2. Extender

To remove the fence, slide it to the right by pressing the stopper down.



M0EBIM2119

3. Press the elevator switch on the multi bypass tray (Tray A).



1. Elevator switch

The lamp of the elevator switch is blinking while the tray is going up, and keeps lit when it stops.

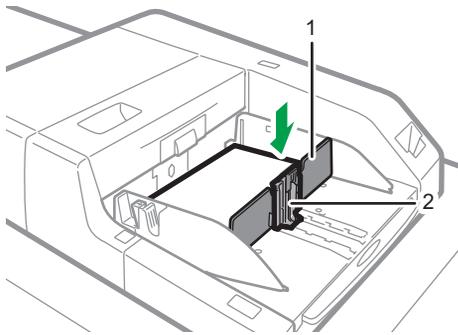
Press the elevator switch to move down the tray if you want to either add paper or remove jammed ones.

Note

- Pull the extender out when loading A4, 8 1/2 × 11 or larger sheets in the multi bypass tray (Tray A).
- You can load envelopes into the multi bypass tray (Tray A). Envelopes must be loaded in a specific orientation. For details, see below.
- See page 128 "Envelope Orientation and Recommended Status".
- If multiple sheet feeding occurs, fan sheets thoroughly or load sheets one by one from the multi bypass tray (Tray A).
- Specify the sizes of paper that are not automatically detected. For details about how to specify sizes, see page 98 "Specifying the Paper Size That Is Not Automatically Detected". For details about the sizes that can be detected automatically, see below.
- See page 101 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types".

Loading Tab Stock into the Multi Bypass Tray (Tray A)

When setting tab stock, always use the tab fence. Tabs must be set at the right side of the multi bypass tray (Tray A).



MOEBIM2121

1. Tab fence
2. Fence

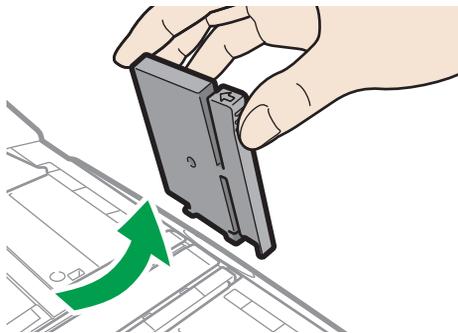
2

Loading Paper on the Multi Bypass Banner Sheet Tray

When the Multi bypass banner sheet tray is attached to the machine, you can load paper that is 487.8 mm–1260.0 mm (19.2–49.6 inches) long horizontally on the tray (Tray A).

1. Remove the fence.

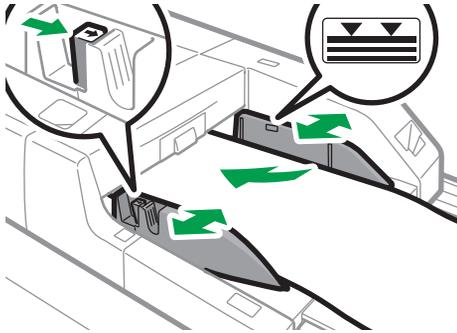
To remove the fence, slide it to the right while pressing down on the stopper.



MOEDIM0131

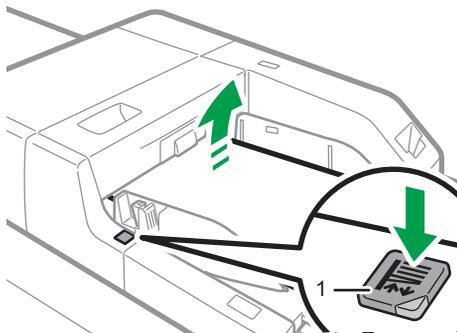
2. Set the fences against the paper, and then square the paper and load it print side up.

Do not stack paper over the upper limit mark.



M0EDIM0113

3. Press the elevator switch on the multi bypass tray (Tray A).



M0EDIM0114

1. Elevator switch

The lamp of the elevator switch blinks while the tray is moving upward and stays lit when it stops. Press the elevator switch to move the tray downward to either add paper or remove jammed paper.

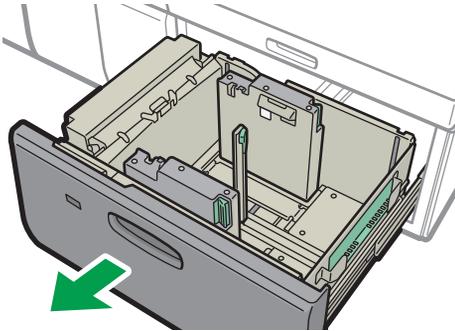
Loading Paper into the Wide Large Capacity Tray

The wide LCT is identified as Tray 3, Tray 4, Tray 5, Tray 6, Tray 7, and Tray 8.

★ Important

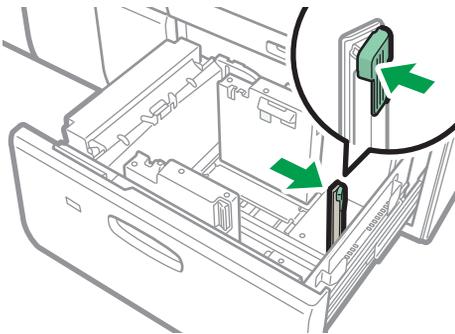
- Check the paper edges are aligned at the left side.
- Depending on the amount of paper curl, the upper limit exceeded notification may occur even if the upper limit sign is not exceeded. When the upper limit exceeded notification occurs, remove the loaded paper from the tray, and load it again.

1. Check that paper in the paper tray is not being used, and then pull the tray carefully out until it stops.



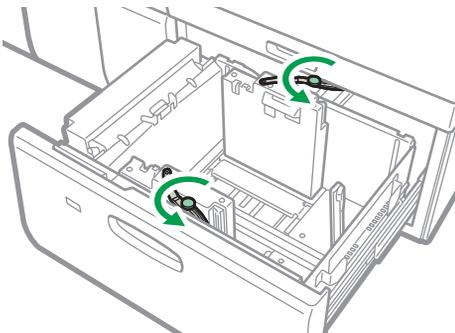
M0EBIM2122

2. Remove paper if loaded.
3. Release the fence.



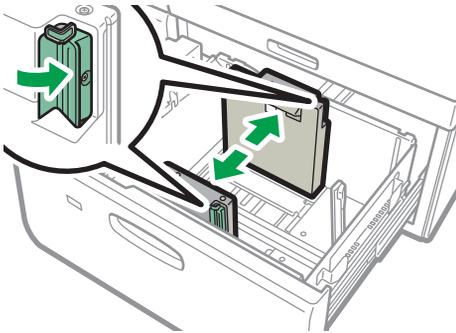
M0EBIM2123

4. Loosen the screw on the arm holding the side fence in place.



M0EDIM0140

5. Release the fence.



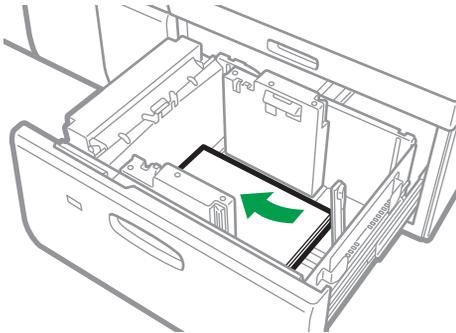
M0EBIM2124

6. Load paper by aligning the paper with the left side of the paper tray.

Place paper with print side up.

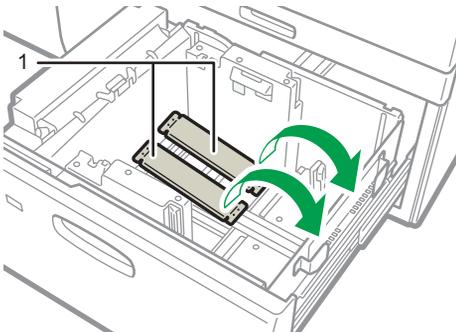
Load a stack of paper about 5–10 mm (0.2–0.4 inches) high.

Make sure the paper rest on top of the supporting plates on both sides.



M0EBIM2125

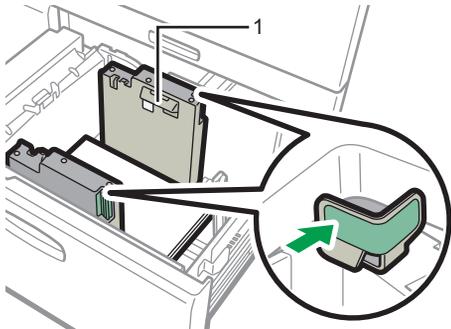
When you load paper that is 204 mm (8.04 inches) or smaller, remove the supporting plates from the bottom of the paper tray.



M0EBIM2126

1. Supporting plates

Check that the paper retainer is extended when you load paper of 220 g/m² (55 lb. Bond) or lower. Push on the lever on the fence to extend the paper retainer.

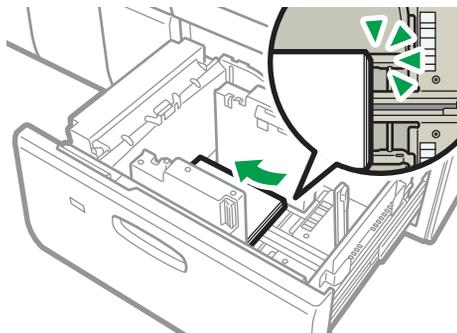


M0EBIM0147

1. Paper retainer

Check that the paper retainer is retracted when you load paper of 220.1 g/m² (55 lb. Bond) or higher.

Use the paper size indicators on the bottom of the paper tray to adjust the fences the space provided by the fences is somewhat wider than the paper size. Load paper so that both sides are on the auxiliary fences.

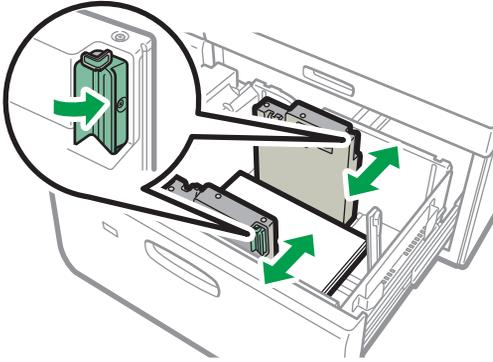


M0EDIM0108

7. Take the grip of the fences with your fingers, and adjust the fences to the paper.

Set the paper flush against the inner fence.

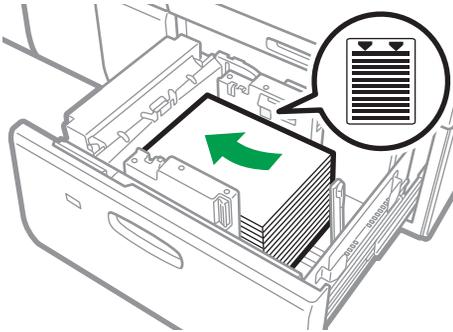
Check that the scale numbers on the top of the fences are roughly the same.



MOEBIM2127

8. Load additional sheets, if necessary.

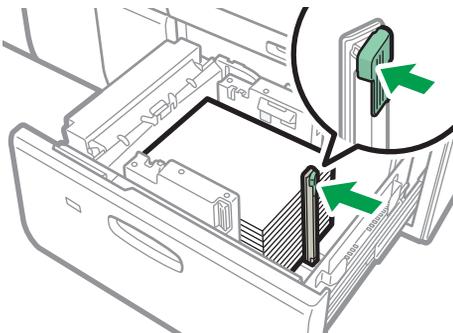
Do not stack paper over the limit mark.



MOEBIM2128

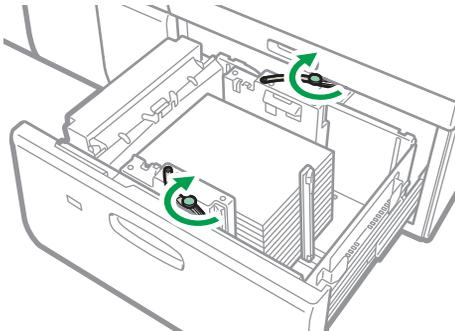
9. Tightly fit the fence to the loaded paper, and then re-lock the fence again.

Make sure there are no gaps between the paper and fence.



MOEBIM2129

10. Tighten the screw on the arm holding the side fence in place.



M0EDIM0134

11. Carefully push the paper tray fully in until it clicks.

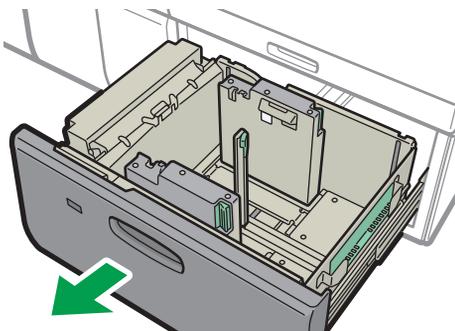
Note

- Various sizes of paper can be loaded in the wide LCT by adjusting the positions of fences.
- See page 101 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types".
- You can load envelopes in the wide LCT. When loading envelopes, place them in the correct orientation. For details, see below.
- See page 128 "Envelope Orientation and Recommended Status".
- When you are using a special printing feature such as banner printing, cover page, and separation sheets, the indicator on the front side of the tray remains lit until printing is completed. You cannot reload paper while the indicator remains lit.

Attaching the Tab Fence in the Wide Large Capacity Tray

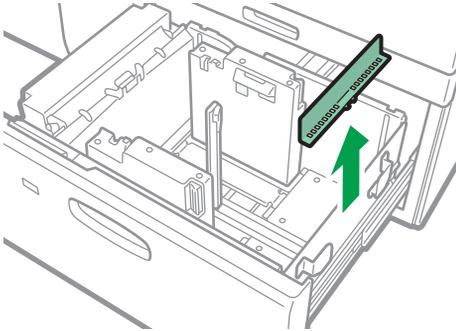
When loading tab stock, attach the tab fence.

- 1. Check that paper in the paper tray is not being used, and then pull the tray carefully out until it stops.**



M0EDIM0109

2. Take out the tab fence from the pocket on the right-hand side of the wide LCT.

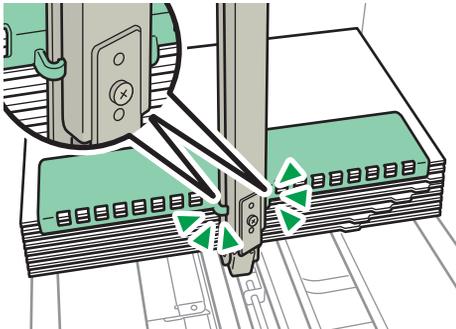


MOEDIM0110

3. Adjust the side fences according to the size of the tab stock to be loaded, and then load the tab stock.

Load the tab stocks with their side with the tabs facing the end fence.

4. Attach the tab fence, and then align the end fence gently against the paper you loaded while pressing the release button of the end fence.



MOEDIM0111

5. Carefully push the paper tray fully in until it clicks.

Note

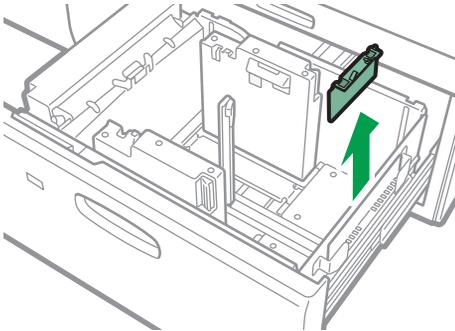
- Replace the tab fence after use.

Attaching the Small Tab End Fence to the Wide Large Capacity Tray

When loading carbonless paper of paper weight 2 or less, attach the small tab end fence.

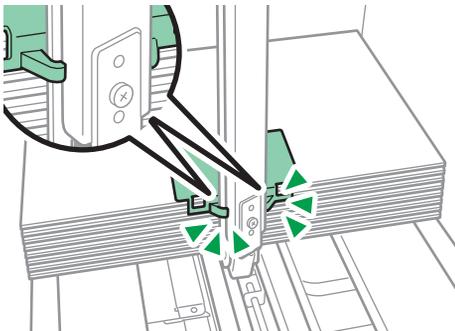
1. Check that paper in the paper tray is not being used, and then pull the tray carefully out until it stops.

2. Take out the small tab end fence from the pocket on the right-hand side of the paper source tray.



M0EBIM2130

3. Set the fences to the paper to be loaded, and then load paper into the tray.
4. Attach the small tab end fence, and then align the fence gently against the paper you loaded while pressing the release button of the fence.



M0EBIM2131

5. Carefully push the paper tray fully in until it clicks.

↓ Note

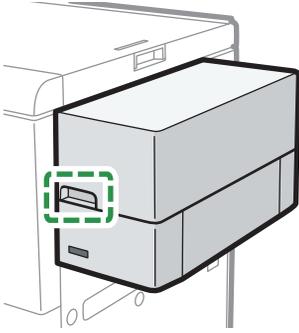
- Replace the small tab end fence after use.

Loading the Paper on LCT Banner Sheet Tray

When LCT banner sheet tray is attached on the machine, you can load paper that is 420.0 mm–700.0 mm (16.5–23.6 inches) long horizontally on the wide LCT.

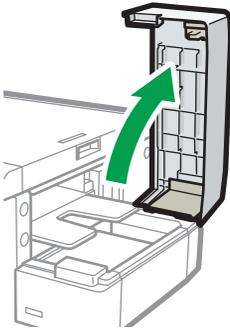
1. Press the **Base Board Descent Button** of LCT banner sheet tray.

The LED indicator flashes for 10 seconds, and then turns off.



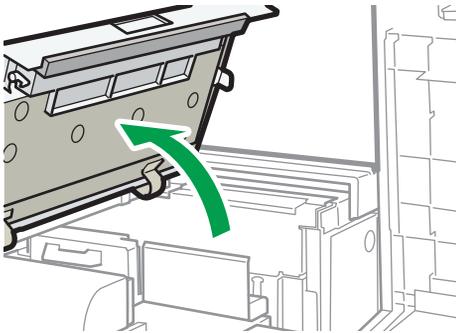
M0EDIM0115

2. Wait until the LED indicator on the Base Board Descent Button is turned off completely, and then open the cover.



M0EDIM0116

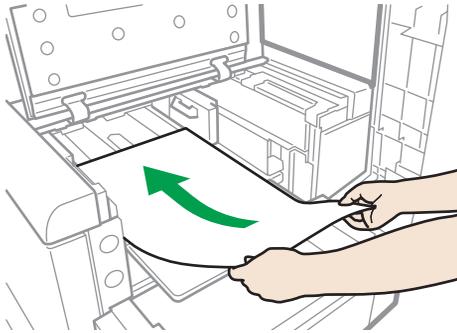
3. Open the cover on the top part of wide LCT.



M0EDIM0117

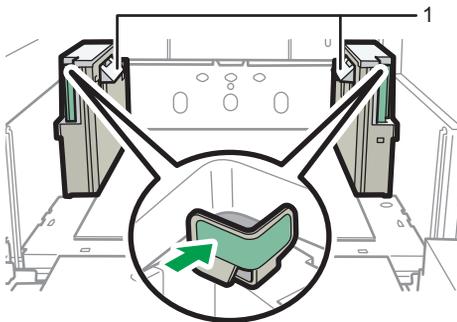
4. While holding the paper horizontally, load it on the tray in small stacks at a time.

When loading a large stack of thin or coated paper, load only a small stack of it at a time. Be careful not to move the sheet of the stack that is already set on the tray when loading an additional stack on top.



M0EDIM0118

Check that the paper retainer is extended when you load paper of 220 g/m² (55 lb. Bond) or lower. Push on the lever on the fence to extend the paper retainer.



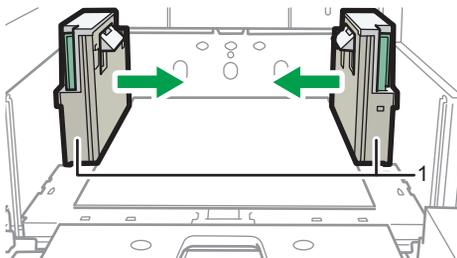
M0EDIM0138

1. Paper retainer

Check that the paper retainer is retracted when you load paper of 220.1 g/m² (55 lb. Bond) or higher.

5. Adjust the fences to match the paper width.

Check the size indicator to see if the paper is loaded correctly all the way to the back of the paper source tray.



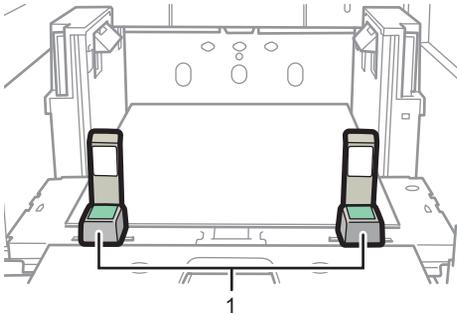
M0EDIM0119

1. Fence

6. Set the auxiliary fences against the sides of the paper with the paper on the line extended along the fences, and adjust the short fences or the long fence to fit the width of the paper.

When loading paper that is 420.0–487.7 mm (16.5–19.2 inches) long

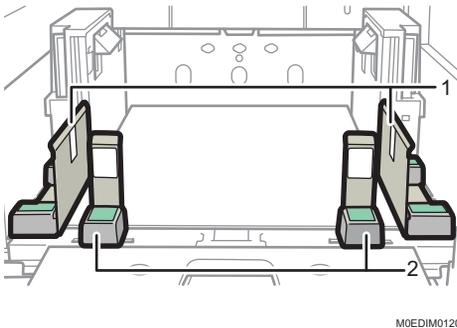
Use the two short fences.



1. Short fences

When loading paper that is 487.8–559.9 mm (19.2–27.6 inches) long

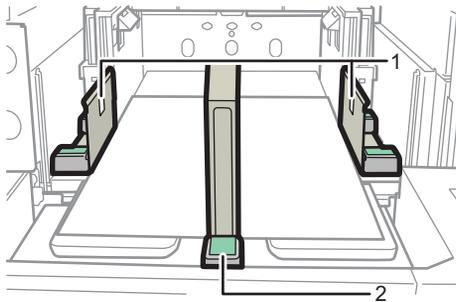
Use the two auxiliary fences and two short fences.



1. Auxiliary fences
2. Short fence

When loading paper that is 560.0–700.0 mm (22.0–27.6 inches) long

Use the two auxiliary fences and one long fence.



1. Auxiliary fences
2. Long fence

7. Add paper as required.

↓ Note

- Remove and store the auxiliary fences, short fences, or long fence from the machine when you are not using them.

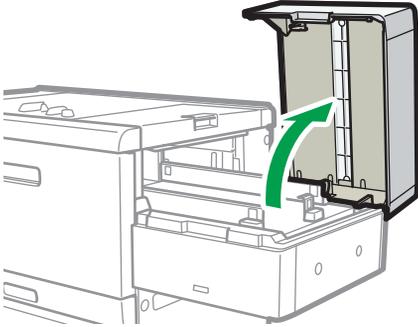
Loading the Paper on the Extension LCT Banner Sheet Tray

When the Extension LCT banner sheet tray is attached to the machine, you can load paper that is 420.0 mm–960.0 mm (16.5–37.8 inches) long horizontally on the wide LCT.

★ Important

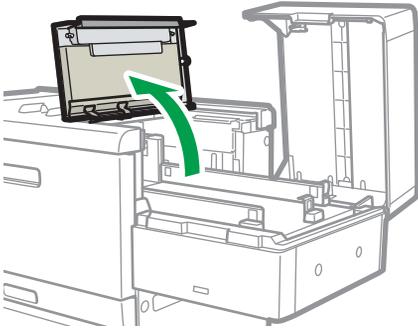
- When feeding paper that is 700.1–960.0 mm (27.6–37.8 inches) long using Extension LCT banner sheet tray, reduce the height of the stack to 40 mm (1.6 inches) or lower for grain long paper of Paper Weight 8 or grain short paper of Paper Weight 6–8.
- Contact your sales or service representative if you dropped the fence or other object beneath the base board.

1. Check that paper is not being fed from the source tray, and then open the cover of Extension LCT banner sheet tray.



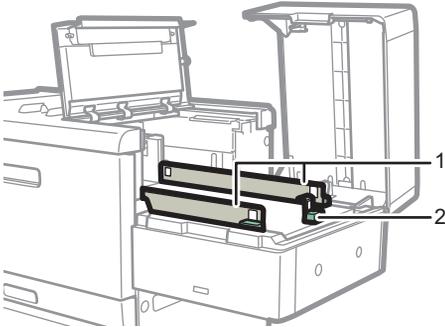
M0EDIM0122

2. Open the Banner Sheet Tray Top Board.



M0EDIM0123

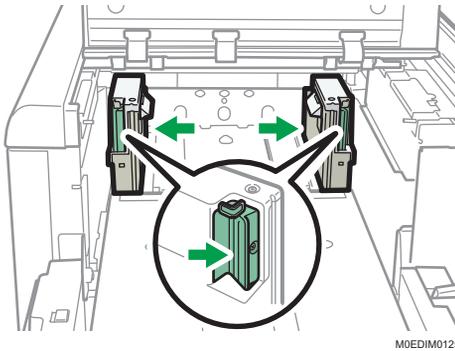
3. Remove the two auxiliary fence and one fence.



M0EDIM0124

1. Auxiliary fences
2. Fence
4. If paper is loaded on the tray, remove it.

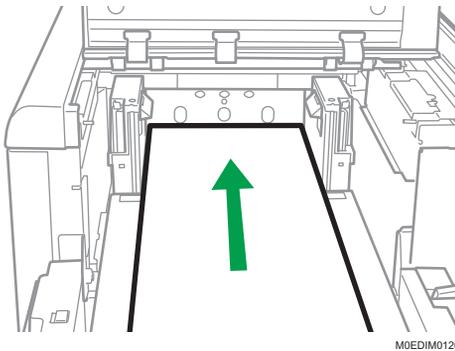
5. Pinch and slide the fences to widen the opening.



M0EDIM0125

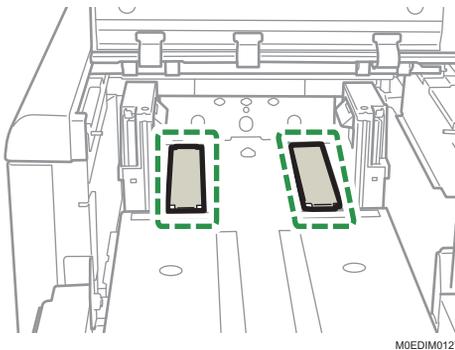
6. Load the paper so that the side is pushed lightly against the left side of the paper feeding tray.

When loading a large stack of thin or coated paper, load only a small stack of it at a time. Be careful not to move the sheet of the stack that is already set on the tray when loading an additional stack on top.



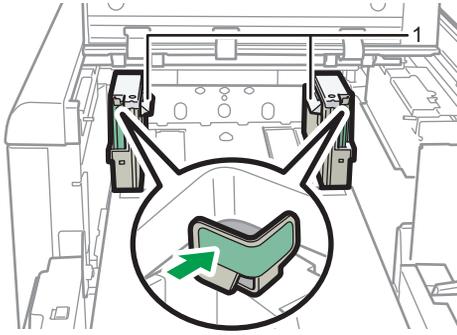
M0EDIM0126

When loading paper that is than 310 mm (12.2 inches) or less in width, remove the supporting plate from the bottom of the tray.



M0EDIM0127

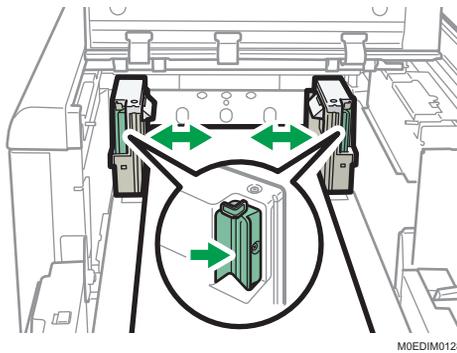
Check that the paper retainer is extended when you load paper of 220 g/m² (55 lb. Bond) or lower. Push on the lever on the fence to extend the paper retainer.



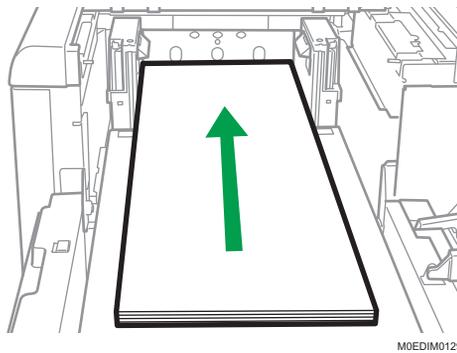
1. Paper retainer

Check that the paper retainer is retracted when you load paper of 220.1 g/m² (55 lb. Bond) or higher.

7. Pinch and adjust the fences to match the size of the paper.



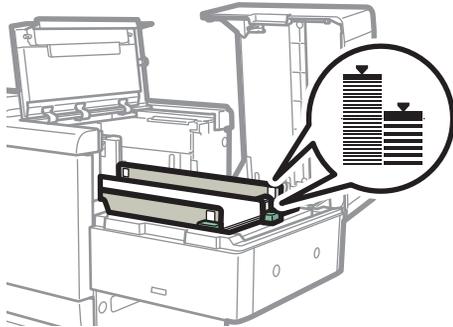
8. Add paper as required.



9. Attach the two auxiliary fences and one fence.

Make sure to keep the height of the paper stack below 50 mm (2.0 inches). When feeding paper that is 487.8–960.0 mm (19.2–37.8 inches) long, reduce the height of the stack to 40 mm (1.6 inches) or lower for grain long paper of Paper Weight 8 or grain short paper of Paper Weight 6–

8. Load the paper so that it is not stacked above the upper limit marks on the auxiliary side fences and end fence.



M0EDIM0130

10. Close the Banner Sheet Tray Top Board.
11. Close the cover of Extension LCT banner sheet tray.

Note

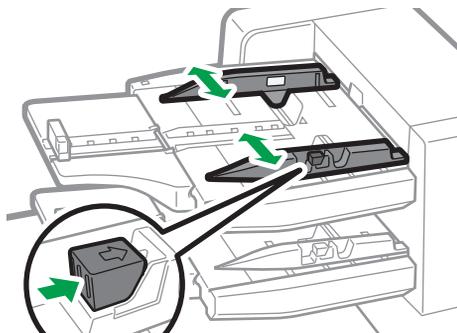
- Remove and store the auxiliary fences or fence from the machine when you are not using them.

Loading Paper into the Interposer

Important

- Do not place anything on top of or leave documents on the sensor. This may lead to the paper size not being correctly scanned or paper jams.

1. While pressing the release lever, align the fences with the paper to be loaded.



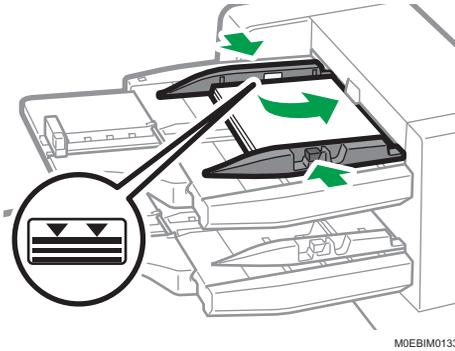
M0EBIM2132

2. Load paper orderly.

Do not stack paper over the limit mark.

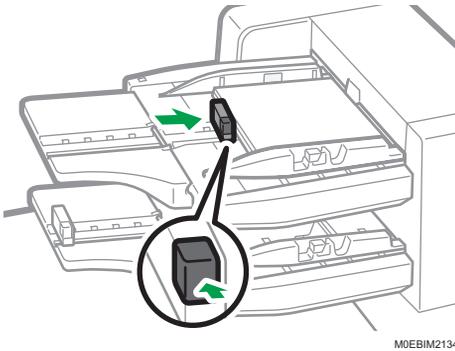
The interposer tray automatically starts the operation shortly after loading paper. Adjust the fences before that.

Align the fences gently against the paper you loaded, if necessary.



M0EBIM0133

While pressing the release lever, align the fence to the loaded paper.



M0EBIM2134

Note

- Load paper with its printed side up (the front side). If you are using the booklet finisher, load sheets print side down.
- Load paper in the interposer in the same orientation as paper in the paper tray.
- The staple position or punch hole position will be on the left side of the paper, when you are facing the machine.

Loading Cover Sheets into the Interposer of the Perfect Binder

★ Important

- The length/size of cover sheets depends on the thickness of the spine.
- Load paper in the  orientation.
- Do not place anything on top of or leave documents on the sensor. This may lead to the paper size not being correctly detected or paper jams.

Estimating the thickness of the spine

This section explains how to calculate the approximate spine thickness.

Note that the length and size of a cover sheet depends on the thickness of the book block spine.

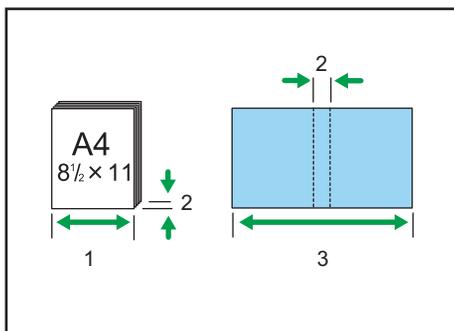
The following list shows examples for A4 or $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$ size, 80.0 g/m² (21.0 lb. Bond) paper:

- 10-sheet book block: 1 mm (0.04 inches)
- 30-sheet book block: 3 mm (0.12 inches)
- 50-sheet book block: 5 mm (0.20 inches)
- 80-sheet book block: 8 mm (0.32 inches)
- 100-sheet book block: 10 mm (0.40 inches)
- 200-sheet book block: 20 mm (0.80 inches)

Specify the cover sheet size based on the thickness of the book block spine. Use the following equation to calculate the length of the cover sheet:

Minimum length of cover sheet (mm/inch) = "length of book block sheet (mm/inch)" \times 2 + "thickness of spine (mm/inch)"

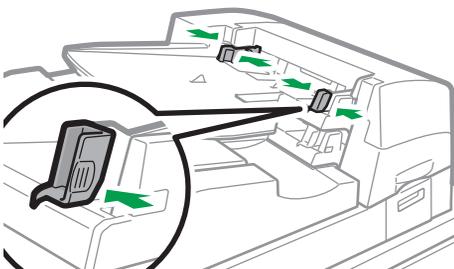
For example, specify a cover sheet length of at least 440 mm (17.4 inches) to perfect bind a booklet comprising 200 sheets of A4 forming a book block of 210 mm (8 $\frac{1}{4}$ inches) long and 20 mm ($\frac{4}{5}$ inches) thick.



CWW369

1. Length of book block sheet
2. Thickness of spine
3. Length of cover sheet

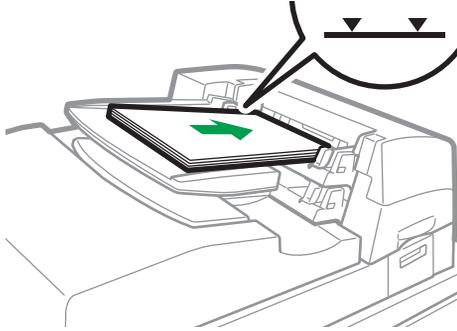
1. While lightly pinching the fence, align it with the paper to be loaded.



M0EBIM2135

2. Load paper face up and neatly stacked.

Do not stack paper over the limit mark.



M0EBIM2136

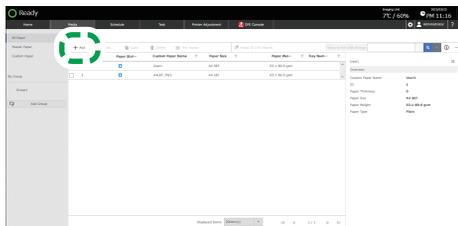
Note

- You cannot perfect bind a booklet if the thickness of the book block's spine exceeds 23 mm (0.9 inches).
- Depending on your machine, the procedure for selecting the orientation of covers and originals might be slightly different. For details, refer to the procedure for your machine.
- When loading thick paper of 251.0 g/m² (138.8 lb. Index) or heavier in the interposer trays of the perfect binder, make sure the grain of the paper is perpendicular to the feed direction.
- If you are loading sheets that are likely to stick together (such as sheets of coated paper), be sure to fan them thoroughly before loading. Fanning them will help prevent jams and allow them to be fed in one sheet at a time.
- The perfect binding process may scratch glossy paper.

Specifying the Paper Size That Is Not Automatically Detected

Specify the paper size on the control panel when loading paper of a size that cannot be detected automatically.

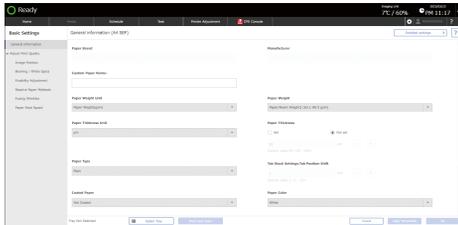
- 1. Press the [Media] hub.**
- 2. Press [Add].**



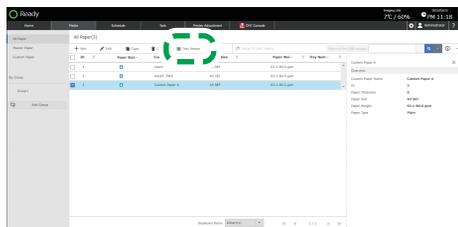
M0EBPM7119

- 3. Specify the Paper Size in the list and then press [OK].**

4. Enter the paper name, and specify the paper weight, thickness, type, and other attributes.



5. Press [OK].
6. Specify a registered paper, and then press [Tray Assign].



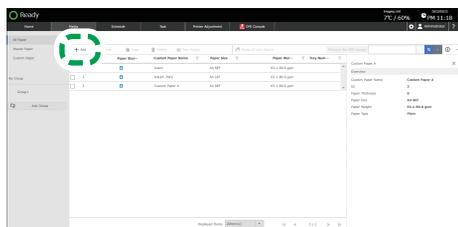
M0EBPM7120

7. Specify the paper tray to specify the paper size, and then press [OK].

Specifying a Custom Size Paper

Specify the paper size on the control panel when loading paper of a custom size.

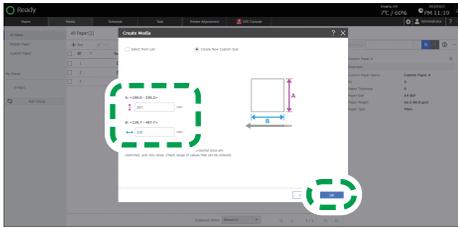
1. Press the [Media] hub.
2. Press [Add].



M0EBPM7121

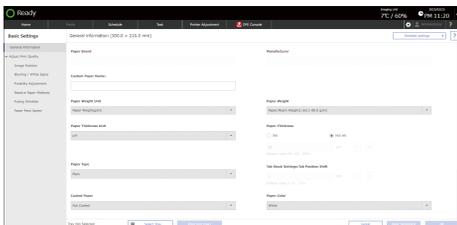
3. Select [Create New Custom Size].

4. Enter the dimensions of [A] (vertical) and [B] (horizontal), and then press [OK].

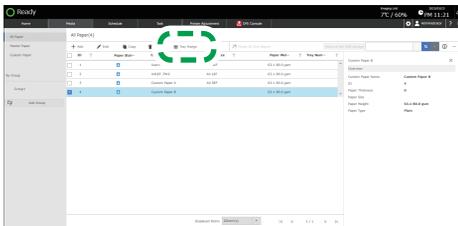


MOEBPM7122

5. Enter the paper name, and specify the paper weight, thickness, type, and other attributes.



6. Press [OK].
7. Specify a registered paper, and then press [Tray Assign].



MOEBPM7123

8. Specify the paper tray to specify the paper size, and then press [OK].

Recommended Paper Sizes and Types

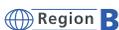
The recommended paper sizes and types for each tray are as described below.

↓ Note

- See page 11 "Abbreviated Names of Options".
- If you use paper that curls, either because it is too dry or too damp, a staple clogging or paper jam may occur.
- When you load transparencies, check the front and back of the sheets, and place them correctly, or a misfeed might occur.
- Certain types of paper, such as translucent paper or transparencies, may produce noise when delivered. This noise does not indicate a problem and print quality is unaffected.
- If multiple sheet feeding occurs, fan sheets thoroughly or load sheets one by one from the multi bypass tray (Tray A).
- You can specify whether or not the machine auto detects multi-sheet feeds in paper from every tray. To specify whether the machine continues or stops printing after detecting a double-feed of paper, use [JAM099] in [1331: Jam Detection] of the adjustment item for custom paper. To specify whether to detect a double feed of paper in Interposer, use [21: Finishing: Interposer] ► [2101: Detect JAM573] / [2101: Detect JAM574] in Adjustment Settings for Operators on the [Printer Adjustment] hub. However, depending on the condition of the paper, the machine may not detect a multi-sheet feed correctly.
- See page 192 "1331: Jam Detection".
- See page 248 "2101: Detect JAM573".
- See page 248 "2101: Detect JAM574".
- Depending on the paper's size, weight, and type, the print speed may be slower than usual.
- When loading envelopes, see page 128 "Envelope Orientation and Recommended Status".

Tray 1

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
52.3–300.0g/m ² (14 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index) Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 7	 Region A A4   Region B 8 1/2 × 11 	1,000 sheets × 2

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
52.3–300.0g/m ² (14 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index) Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 7	*1  Region A 8 1/2 × 11   Region B A4 	1,000 sheets × 2

*1 To load paper any of the sizes specified above, contact your service representative.

Tray 1 (A3/11 × 17 tray unit)

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
52.3–300.0g/m ² (14 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index) Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 7	11 × 17 	1,000 sheets
52.3–300.0g/m ² (14 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index) Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 7	*1 A3  , A4, B4 JIS  , 8 1/2 × 14   , 8 1/2 × 11	1,000 sheets
52.3–300.0g/m ² (14 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index) Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 7	Custom size *2:  Region A Vertical: 210.0–305.0 mm Horizontal: 210.0–439.0 mm  Region B Vertical: 8.27–12.00 inches Horizontal: 8.27–17.28 inches	1,000 sheets

*1 To load paper any of the sizes specified above, contact your service representative.

*2 For details about how to load custom size paper, contact your service representative.

Tray 2

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
52.3–256.0g/m ² (14 lb. Bond–141 lb. Index) Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 6	<p>Paper sizes that can be detected automatically:</p> <p> Region A</p> <p>A3, A4, A5, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11 × 17, 8¹/₂ × 14, 8¹/₂ × 13, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8¹/₄ × 13, 8 × 13, 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂, 8K, 16K, SRA3</p> <p> Region B</p> <p>A3, A4, A5, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11 × 17, 8¹/₂ × 14, 8¹/₂ × 13, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8¹/₄ × 13, 8 × 13, 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂, 8K, 16K, 12 × 18</p>	500 sheets
52.3–256.0g/m ² (14 lb. Bond–141 lb. Index) Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 6	<p>Select the paper size using the Tray Paper Settings menu:</p> <p> Region A</p> <p>8¹/₄ × 14, 8 × 10, 12 × 18, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 13 × 18, SRA4, 226 × 310, 310 × 432</p> <p> Region B</p> <p>8¹/₄ × 14, 8 × 10, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 13 × 18, SRA3, SRA4, 226 × 310, 310 × 432</p>	500 sheets

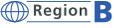
Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
52.3–256.0g/m ² (14 lb. Bond–141 lb. Index) Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 6	Custom size:  Region A Vertical: 139.7–330.2 mm Horizontal: 139.7–457.2 mm  Region B Vertical: 5.50–13.00 inches Horizontal: 5.50–18.00 inches	500 sheets
Translucent paper 52.3–63.0 g/m ² (14–16 lb. Bond) Paper Weight 1	A3  , A4, B4 JIS  , B5 JIS	*1
Transparencies 163.1–220.0 g/m ² (60–81 lb. Cover) Paper Weight 5	A4	*1
Tab stock * ² 52.3–256.0g/m ² (14 lb. Bond–141 lb. Index) Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 6	A4  , 8 1/2 × 14  , 8 1/2 × 11 	200 sheets (80.0–199.0 g/m ² , 21 lb. Bond–110 lb. Index)

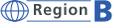
*1 Do not stack paper over the limit mark. The maximum number of sheets you can set at once depends on the paper's thickness and condition.

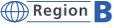
*2 The optional tab sheet holder is required.

Wide LCT (Trays 3–8)^{*1*14}

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
40.0–470.0 g/m ² (11–125 lb. Bond) ^{*19} Paper Weight 0 ^{*18} –Paper Weight 9 ^{*2*20*21*22}	<p>Paper sizes that can be detected automatically:^{*3}</p> <p> Region A</p> <p>A3^{*4}, A4, A5, B4 JIS[□], 11 × 17^{□*4}, 8^{1/2} × 14[□], 8^{1/2} × 11[□], 8 × 13[□], 7^{1/4} × 10^{1/2}[□], 5^{1/2} × 8^{1/2}[□], 12 × 18^{□*4}, 13 × 19^{1/5}^{□*4}, SRA3^{□*4}, SRA4[□]</p> <p> Region B</p> <p>A3^{□*4}, A4[□], A5[□], B4 JIS[□], 11 × 17^{□*4}, 8^{1/2} × 14[□], 8^{1/2} × 11, 8 × 13[□], 7^{1/4} × 10^{1/2}[□], 5^{1/2} × 8^{1/2}, 12 × 18^{□*4}, 13 × 19^{1/5}^{□*4}, SRA3^{□*4}, SRA4[□]</p>	2,200 sheets ^{*8} (on paper 0.11 mm (0.004 inches) thick)

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
<p>40.0–470.0 g/m² (11–125 lb. Bond) ^{*19}</p> <p>Paper Weight 0 ^{*18}–Paper Weight 9 ^{*2*20*21*22}</p>	<p>Select the paper size using the Tray Paper Settings menu:</p> <p> Region A</p> <p>A6 ^{*5}, B5 JIS ^{*5}, B6 JIS ^{*5}, 8 1/2 × 13 ^{*5}, 8 1/2 × 11 ^{*5}, 8 1/4 × 14 ^{*5}, 8 1/4 × 13 ^{*5}, 8 × 10 ^{*5}, 7 1/4 × 10 1/2 ^{*5}, 5 1/2 × 8 1/2 ^{*5}, 8K ^{*5}, 16K ^{*5},</p> <p>11 × 15 ^{*5}, 11 × 14 ^{*5}, 10 × 15 ^{*5}, 10 × 14 ^{*5}, 13 × 19 ^{*5}, 12 3/5 × 19 1/5 ^{*5}, 12 3/5 × 18 1/2 ^{*5}, 13 × 18 ^{*5}, SRA4 ^{*5}, 226 × 310 mm ^{*5}, 310 × 432 mm ^{*5}, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5 ^{*5}, 4 1/5 × 5 1/2 ^{*5}</p> <p> Region B</p> <p>A4 ^{*5}, A5 ^{*5}, B5 JIS ^{*5}, B6 JIS ^{*5}, A6 ^{*5}, 8 1/2 × 13 ^{*5}, 8 1/4 × 14 ^{*5}, 8 1/4 × 13 ^{*5}, 8 × 10 ^{*5}, 7 1/4 × 10 1/2 ^{*5}, 8K ^{*5}, 16K ^{*5}, 11 × 15 ^{*5}, 11 × 14 ^{*5},</p> <p>10 × 15 ^{*5}, 10 × 14 ^{*5}, 13 × 19 ^{*5}, 12 3/5 × 19 1/5 ^{*5}, 12 3/5 × 18 1/2 ^{*5}, 13 × 18 ^{*5}, SRA4 ^{*5}, 226 × 310 mm ^{*5}, 310 × 432 mm ^{*5}, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5 ^{*5}, 4 1/5 × 5 1/2 ^{*5}</p>	<p>2,200 sheets ^{*8} (on paper 0.11 mm (0.004 inches) thick)</p>
<p>40.0–470.0 g/m² (11–125 lb. Bond) ^{*19}</p> <p>Paper Weight 0 ^{*18}–Paper Weight 9 ^{*2*20*21*22}</p>	<p>Custom size: ^{*6}</p> <p> Region A</p> <p>Vertical: 100.0–330.2 mm</p> <p>Horizontal: 139.7–487.7 mm</p> <p> Region B</p> <p>Vertical: 3.94–13.00 inches</p> <p>Horizontal: 5.50–19.20 inches</p>	<p>2,200 sheets ^{*8} (on paper 0.11 mm (0.004 inches) thick)</p>

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
Coated: Glossy ^{*17} Coated: Matte ^{*17} 52.3–470.0 g/m ² (14–125 lb. Bond) ^{*19} Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 9 ^{*2*21*22}	Paper sizes that can be detected automatically: ^{*3}  Region A A3 ^{*4} , A4, A5, B4 JIS [□] , 11 × 17 ^{□*4} , 8 ^{1/2} × 14 [□] , 8 ^{1/2} × 11 [□] , 8 × 13 [□] , 7 ^{1/4} × 10 ^{1/2} [□] , 5 ^{1/2} × 8 ^{1/2} [□] , 12 × 18 ^{□*4} , 13 × 19 ^{1/5} ^{□*4} , SRA3 ^{□*4} , SRA4 [□]  Region B A3 ^{□*4} , A4 [□] , A5 [□] , B4 JIS [□] , 11 × 17 ^{□*4} , 8 ^{1/2} × 14 [□] , 8 ^{1/2} × 11, 8 × 13 [□] , 7 ^{1/4} × 10 ^{1/2} [□] , 5 ^{1/2} × 8 ^{1/2} , 12 × 18 ^{□*4} , 13 × 19 ^{1/5} ^{□*4} , SRA3 ^{□*4} , SRA4 [□]	*9

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
<p>Coated: Glossy ^{*17}</p> <p>Coated: Matte ^{*17}</p> <p>52.3–470.0 g/m² (14–125 lb. Bond) ^{*19}</p> <p>Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 9^{*2*21*22}</p>	<p>Select the paper size using the Tray Paper Settings menu:</p> <p> Region A</p> <p>A6^{*5}, B5 JIS^{*5}, B6 JIS^{*5}, 8¹/₂ × 13^{*5}, 8¹/₂ × 11^{*5}, 8¹/₄ × 14^{*5}, 8¹/₄ × 13^{*5}, 8 × 10^{*5}, 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂^{*5}, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂^{*5}, 8K^{*5}, 16K^{*5},</p> <p>11 × 15^{*5}, 11 × 14^{*5}, 10 × 15^{*5}, 10 × 14^{*5}, 13 × 19^{*5}, 12³/₅ × 19¹/₅^{*5}, 12³/₅ × 18¹/₂^{*5}, 13 × 18^{*5}, SRA4^{*5}, 226 × 310 mm^{*5}, 310 × 432 mm^{*5}, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅^{*5}, 4¹/₅ × 5¹/₂^{*5}</p> <p> Region B</p> <p>A4^{*5}, A5^{*5}, B5 JIS^{*5}, B6 JIS^{*5}, A6^{*5}, 8¹/₂ × 13^{*5}, 8¹/₄ × 14^{*5}, 8¹/₄ × 13^{*5}, 8 × 10^{*5}, 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂^{*5}, 8K^{*5}, 16K^{*5}, 11 × 15^{*5}, 11 × 14^{*5},</p> <p>10 × 15^{*5}, 10 × 14^{*5}, 13 × 19^{*5}, 12³/₅ × 19¹/₅^{*5}, 12³/₅ × 18¹/₂^{*5}, 13 × 18^{*5}, SRA4^{*5}, 226 × 310 mm^{*5}, 310 × 432 mm^{*5}, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅^{*5}, 4¹/₅ × 5¹/₂^{*5}</p>	<p>^{*9}</p>
<p>Coated: Glossy ^{*17}</p> <p>Coated: Matte ^{*17}</p> <p>52.3–470.0 g/m² (14–125 lb. Bond) ^{*19}</p> <p>Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 9^{*2*21*22}</p>	<p>Custom size:^{*6}</p> <p> Region A</p> <p>Vertical: 100.0–330.2 mm</p> <p>Horizontal: 139.7–487.7 mm</p> <p> Region B</p> <p>Vertical: 3.94–13.00 inches</p> <p>Horizontal: 5.50–19.20 inches</p>	<p>^{*9}</p>

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
Translucent paper ^{*7} 52.3–63.0 g/m ² (14–17 lb. Bond) Paper Weight 1	A3 [□] , A4, B5 JIS	*9
Transparencies ^{*7} 163.1–220.0 g/m ² (60–81 lb. Cover) Paper Weight 5	A4, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11	*9
Tab stock ^{*7*10} Tab stock (Coated: Glossy) ^{*7*10} Tab stock (Coated: Matte) ^{*7*10} 52.3–470.0 g/m ² (14–125 lb. Bond) ^{*19} Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 9 ^{*22}	A4 [□] , 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14 [□] , 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 [□]	*9
Label paper ^{*7*17} 52.3–470.0 g/m ² (14–125 lb. Bond) ^{*19} Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 9 ^{*22}	A4, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11	*9
Envelopes ^{*7} Envelopes (Coated: Glossy) ^{*7} Envelopes (Coated: Matte) ^{*7} 163.1–300.0 g/m ² (60 lb. Cover–165 lb. Index) (Thickness of overlapping part of the envelope.) Paper Weight 5–Paper Weight 7	*11, *12, *13 240 × 332 mm, 235 × 120 mm, 120 × 235 mm, 105 × 241 mm, 110 × 220 mm	*15

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
<p>Carbonless paper ^{*16} 40.0–470.0 g/m² (11–125 lb. Bond) ^{*19} Paper Weight 0 ^{*18}–Paper Weight 9 ^{*2*21*22}</p>	<p>Paper sizes that can be detected automatically: ^{*3}</p> <p> Region A</p> <p>A3 ^{*4}, A4, A5, B4 JIS [*], 11 × 17 ^{*4}, 8 1/2 × 14 [*], 8 1/2 × 11 [*], 8 × 13 [*], 7 1/4 × 10 1/2 [*], 5 1/2 × 8 1/2 [*], 12 × 18 ^{*4}, 13 × 19 1/5 ^{*4}, SRA3 ^{*4}, SRA4 [*]</p> <p> Region B</p> <p>A3 ^{*4}, A4 [*], A5 [*], B4 JIS [*], 11 × 17 ^{*4}, 8 1/2 × 14 ^{*4}, 8 1/2 × 11, 8 × 13 [*], 7 1/4 × 10 1/2 [*], 5 1/2 × 8 1/2, 12 × 18 ^{*4}, 13 × 19 1/5 ^{*4}, SRA3 ^{*4}, SRA4 [*]</p>	<p>^{*9}</p>

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
Carbonless paper ^{*16} 40.0–470.0 g/m ² (11–125 lb. Bond) ^{*19} Paper Weight 0 ^{*18} –Paper Weight 9 ^{*2*21*22}	Select the paper size using the Tray Paper Settings menu:  Region A A6 ^{*5} , B5 JIS ^{*5} , B6 JIS ^{*5} , 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ^{*5} , 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 ^{*5} , 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14 ^{*5} , 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13 ^{*5} , 8 × 10 ^{*5} , 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ ^{*5} , 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ ^{*5} , 8K ^{*5} , 16K ^{*5} , 11 × 15 ^{*5} , 11 × 14 ^{*5} , 10 × 15 ^{*5} , 10 × 14 ^{*5} , 13 × 19 ^{*5} , 12 ³ / ₅ × 19 ¹ / ₅ ^{*5} , 12 ³ / ₅ × 18 ¹ / ₂ ^{*5} , 13 × 18 ^{*5} , SRA4 ^{*5} , 226 × 310 mm ^{*5} , 310 × 432 mm ^{*5} , 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ ^{*5} , 4 ¹ / ₅ × 5 ¹ / ₂ ^{*5}  Region B A4 ^{*5} , A5 ^{*5} , B5 JIS ^{*5} , B6 JIS ^{*5} , A6 ^{*5} , 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ^{*5} , 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14 ^{*5} , 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13 ^{*5} , 8 × 10 ^{*5} , 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ ^{*5} , 8K ^{*5} , 16K ^{*5} , 11 × 15 ^{*5} , 11 × 14 ^{*5} , 10 × 15 ^{*5} , 10 × 14 ^{*5} , 13 × 19 ^{*5} , 12 ³ / ₅ × 19 ¹ / ₅ ^{*5} , 12 ³ / ₅ × 18 ¹ / ₂ ^{*5} , 13 × 18 ^{*5} , SRA4 ^{*5} , 226 × 310 mm ^{*5} , 310 × 432 mm ^{*5} , 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ ^{*5} , 4 ¹ / ₅ × 5 ¹ / ₂ ^{*5}	*9
Carbonless paper ^{*16} 40.0–470.0 g/m ² (11–125 lb. Bond) ^{*19} Paper Weight 0 ^{*18} –Paper Weight 9 ^{*2*21*22}	Custom size:  Region A Vertical: 100.0–330.2 mm Horizontal: 139.7–487.7 mm  Region B Vertical: 3.94–13.00 inches Horizontal: 5.50–19.20 inches	*9

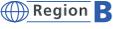
*1 LCT banner sheet tray and extension LCT banner sheet tray can be attached on the uppermost stream of tray 3/5/7 only.

*2 You can feed paper of 52.3–400.0 g/m² (14–106 lb. Bond) from LCT banner sheet tray when you specify paper of 487.8 mm (19.2 inches) or longer.

- *3 The auto detect function does not work when the LCT banner sheet tray or extension LCT banner sheet tray is attached.
- *4 Specify the paper size in the paper settings when the LCT banner sheet tray or extension LCT banner sheet tray is attached.
- *5 You cannot specify the paper size when the LCT banner sheet tray or extension LCT banner sheet tray is attached.
- *6 You can feed paper that is 210–330.2 mm (8.3–13.0 inches) long and 420.0–700 mm (16.6–27.6 inches) wide when the LCT banner sheet tray is attached. You can feed paper that is 210–330.2 mm (8.3–13.0 inches) long and 420.0–960 mm (16.6–37.8 inches) wide when the extension LCT banner sheet tray is attached.
- *7 You cannot specify paper type when the LCT banner sheet tray or extension LCT banner sheet tray is attached.
- *8 You can load up to 800 sheets of paper that is 420.0–700 mm (16.6–27.6 inches) long when the LCT banner sheet tray is attached. You can feed up to 500 sheets of paper that is 420.0–960 mm (16.6–37.8 inches) long when the extension LCT banner sheet tray is attached (on paper 0.1 mm (0.004 inches) thick).
- *9 Do not stack paper over the limit mark. The maximum number of sheets you can set at once depends on the paper's thickness and condition.
- *10 The tab fence is required.
- *11 Open the flaps, and load the envelopes with their flaps pointed toward the right side of the paper tray.
- *12 It is necessary to specify the sizes of the envelopes including their flap sizes using [Custom Size] in [Tray Paper Settings].
- *13 The envelope sizes on the table do not include their flaps.
- *14 Flatten curls so that they fit within the following guidelines.
Black color paper: Curl height 5 mm (0.2 inches) or below, R over 100 mm (3.94 inches).
Other papers: Curl height 10 mm (0.4 inches) or below, R over 100 mm (3.94 inches).
- *15 Flatten the curl on the envelope, then set the difference of the stack height of the bottom of the envelope and the stack height of the flap portion to be 10 mm (0.4 inches) or below.
- *16 Attach the small tab end fence when loading carbonless paper of paper weight 2 or less.
- *17 Avoid use in high temperature and humidity.
- *18 You can load the brand specified by the manufacturer only. Also, align the grain direction of the paper with the feed direction when loading the paper on the tray.
- *19 The paper brand of usable paper of 400g/m² (106 lb. Bond) or more is specified. For details, contact your local dealer.
- *20 When loading paper with punch holes, set the paper in the direction so that the punch holes are on the trailing edge of the paper.
- *21 You can feed paper of 52.3–400 g/m² (14–106 lb. Bond) when you specify paper of 487.8–700 mm (19.2–27.6 inches) while using Extension LCT banner sheet tray. You can feed paper of 63.1–310.0 g/m² (17–82 lb. Bond) when you specify paper of 700.1 mm (27.6 inches) or longer.
- *22 Grain short paper of Paper Weight 2 cannot be used when paper that is 700.1–960.0 mm (27.6–37.8 inches) long is specified.

Multi bypass tray (Tray A)

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
52.3–216.0 g/m ² (14 lb. Bond–80 lb. Cover) Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 5	<p>Paper sizes that can be detected automatically:</p> <p> Region A</p> <p>A3, A4, A5, A6, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11 × 17, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8 × 13, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂, SRA3</p> <p> Region B</p> <p>A3, A4, A5, A6, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11 × 17, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8 × 13, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂, 12 × 18</p>	500 sheets (on paper 0.11 mm (0.004 inches) thick)

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
<p>52.3–216.0 g/m² (14 lb. Bond–80 lb. Cover)</p> <p>Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 5</p>	<p>*1</p> <p> Region A</p> <p>B5 JIS[□], B6 JIS[□], 8¹/₂ × 14[□], 8¹/₂ × 13[□], 8¹/₂ × 11[□], 8¹/₄ × 14[□], 8¹/₄ × 13[□], 8 × 10[□], 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂[□], 8K[□], 16K, 11 × 15[□], 12 × 18[□], 11 × 14[□], 10 × 15[□], 10 × 14[□], 13 × 19¹/₅[□], 13 × 19[□], 12³/₅ × 19¹/₅[□], 12³/₅ × 18¹/₂[□], 13 × 18[□], SRA4, 226 × 310 mm, 310 × 432 mm[□], 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅[□], 4¹/₅ × 5¹/₂[□]</p> <p> Region B</p> <p>A4[□], A5[□], B5 JIS[□], B6 JIS[□], 8¹/₂ × 14[□], 8¹/₂ × 13[□], 8¹/₄ × 14[□], 8¹/₄ × 13[□], 8 × 10[□], 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂, 8K[□], 16K, 11 × 15[□], 11 × 14[□], 10 × 15[□], 10 × 14[□], 13 × 19¹/₅[□], 13 × 19[□], 12³/₅ × 19¹/₅[□], 12³/₅ × 18¹/₂[□], 13 × 18[□], SRA3[□], SRA4, 226 × 310 mm, 310 × 432 mm[□], 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅[□], 4¹/₅ × 5¹/₂[□]</p>	<p>500 sheets (on paper 0.11 mm (0.004 inches) thick)</p>
<p>52.3–216.0 g/m² (14 lb. Bond–80 lb. Cover)</p> <p>Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 5</p>	<p>Custom size: *2</p> <p> Region A</p> <p>Vertical: 100.0–330.2 mm *3</p> <p>Horizontal: 139.7–487.7 mm *4*5</p> <p> Region B</p> <p>Vertical: 3.94–13.00 inches *3</p> <p>Horizontal: 5.50–19.20 inches *4*5</p>	<p>500 sheets (on paper 0.11 mm (0.004 inches) thick)</p>

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
Translucent paper 52.3–63.0 g/m ² (14–17 lb. Bond) Paper Weight 1	A3☐, A4, B5 JIS	*6
Transparencies 163.1–216.0 g/m ² (60–80 lb. Cover) Paper Weight 5	A4, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11	*6
Tab stock*7 52.3–216.0 g/m ² (14 lb. Bond–80 lb. Cover) Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 5	A4☐, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14☐, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11☐	*6
Envelopes 163.1–216.0 g/m ² (60 lb. Cover–80 lb. Cover) Paper Weight 5	 Region A Vertical: 100.0–330.2 mm Horizontal: 139.7–487.7 mm  Region B Vertical: 3.94–13.00 inches Horizontal: 5.50–19.20 inches	10 sheets

*1 Select the paper size. See page 154 "Changing Tray Paper Settings".

*2 Enter the paper size. See page 154 "Changing Tray Paper Settings".

*3 When printing on paper with a horizontal length of 487.8 mm or more, you can specify a vertical length between 210.0 mm and 330.2 mm (8.27 inches and 13.00 inches).

*4 When the banner sheet tray of multi bypass tray (Tray A) is installed, the maximum horizontal length of custom size paper is 1260.0 mm (49.60 inches).

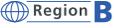
*5 When using paper with a horizontal length between 700.1 mm and 1260.0 mm (27.56 inches and 49.60 inches) with the multi bypass banner sheet tray attached, load and print one sheet at a time. However, depending on the brand of paper, some paper with a horizontal length of 700.1 mm (27.56 inches) or more may be unusable because it could cause paper jamming or other problems.

*6 Do not stack paper over the limit mark. The maximum number of sheets you can set at once depends on paper weights and conditions.

*7 The tab fence is required.

Interposer

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
52.3–300.0 g/m ² (14 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index) Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 7	Paper sizes that can be detected automatically:  Region A A3☐, A4, A5, B4 JIS☐, B5 JIS☐, 11 × 17☐, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11☐, 8 × 13☐, 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ ☐, SRA3☐  Region B A3☐, A4☐, A5☐, B4 JIS☐, B5 JIS☐, 11 × 17☐, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 8 × 13☐, 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ , 12 × 18☐	220 sheets × 2 (on paper 0.1 mm (0.004 inches) thick)

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
<p>52.3–300.0 g/m² (14 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index)</p> <p>Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 7</p>	<p>Select the paper size using the Tray Paper Settings menu:</p> <p> Region A</p> <p>B5 JIS, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5, 8 1/2 × 13, 8 1/2 × 11, 8 1/4 × 14, 8 1/4 × 13, 8 × 10, 7 1/4 × 10 1/2, 5 1/2 × 8 1/2, 8K, 16K, 12 × 18, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 13 × 19 1/5, 13 × 19, 12 3/5 × 19 1/5, 12 3/5 × 18 1/2, 13 × 18, SRA4, 226 × 310, 310 × 432</p> <p> Region B</p> <p>A4, A5, B5 JIS, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5, 8 1/2 × 13, 8 1/4 × 14, 8 1/4 × 13, 8 × 10, 7 1/4 × 10 1/2, 8K, 16K, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 13 × 19 1/5, 13 × 19, 12 3/5 × 19 1/5, 12 3/5 × 18 1/2, 13 × 18, SRA3, SRA4, 226 × 310, 310 × 432</p>	<p>220 sheets × 2 (on paper 0.1 mm (0.004 inches) thick)</p>
<p>52.3–300.0 g/m² (14 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index)</p> <p>Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 7</p>	<p>Custom size:</p> <p> Region A</p> <p>Vertical: 139.7–330.2 mm</p> <p>Horizontal: 139.7–487.7 mm</p> <p> Region B</p> <p>Vertical: 5.50–13.00 inches</p> <p>Horizontal: 5.50–19.20 inches</p>	<p>220 sheets × 2 (on paper 0.1 mm (0.004 inches) thick)</p>

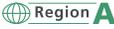
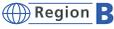
Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
<p>Coated: Glossy Coated: Matte 105.1–300.0 g/m² (28 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index) Paper Weight 4–Paper Weight 7</p>	<p>Paper sizes that can be detected automatically:</p> <p> Region A</p> <p>A3☐, A4, A5, B4 JIS☐, B5 JIS☐, 11 × 17☐, 8¹/₂ × 11☐, 8 × 13☐, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂☐, SRA3☐</p> <p> Region B</p> <p>A3☐, A4☐, A5☐, B4 JIS☐, B5 JIS☐, 11 × 17☐, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8 × 13☐, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂, 12 × 18☐</p>	<p>*1</p>
<p>Coated: Glossy Coated: Matte 105.1–300.0 g/m² (28 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index) Paper Weight 4–Paper Weight 7</p>	<p>Select the paper size using the Tray Paper Settings menu:</p> <p> Region A</p> <p>B5 JIS☐, 8¹/₂ × 14☐, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅☐, 8¹/₂ × 13☐, 8¹/₂ × 11☐, 8¹/₄ × 14☐, 8¹/₄ × 13☐, 8 × 10☐, 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂☐, 8K☐, 16K, 12 × 18☐</p> <p>11 × 15☐, 11 × 14☐, 10 × 15☐, 10 × 14☐, 13 × 19¹/₅☐, 13 × 19☐, 12³/₅ × 19¹/₅☐, 12³/₅ × 18¹/₂☐, 13 × 18☐, SRA4</p> <p> Region B</p> <p>A4☐, A5☐, B5 JIS☐, 8¹/₂ × 14☐, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅☐, 8¹/₂ × 13☐, 8¹/₄ × 14☐, 8¹/₄ × 13☐, 8 × 10☐, 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂, 8K☐, 16K, 11 × 15☐,</p> <p>11 × 14☐, 10 × 15☐, 10 × 14☐, 13 × 19¹/₅☐, 13 × 19☐, 12³/₅ × 19¹/₅☐, 12³/₅ × 18¹/₂☐, 13 × 18☐, SRA3☐, SRA4, 226 × 310, 310 × 432☐</p>	<p>*1</p>

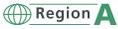
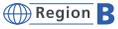
Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
Coated: Glossy Coated: Matte 105.1–300.0 g/m ² (28 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index) Paper Weight 4–Paper Weight 7	Custom size:  Region A Vertical: 139.7–330.2 mm Horizontal: 139.7–487.7 mm  Region B Vertical: 5.50–13.00 inches Horizontal: 5.50–19.20 inches	*1
Translucent paper 52.3–63.0 g/m ² (14–17 lb. Bond) Paper Weight 1	A3 [□] , A4, B5 JIS	*1
Transparencies 163.1–220.0 g/m ² (60–81 lb. Cover) Paper Weight 5	A4, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11	*1
Tab stock 52.3–300.0 g/m ² (14 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index) Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 7	A4 [□] , 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14 [□] , 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 [□]	*1
Tab stock (Coated: Glossy) Tab stock (Coated: Matte) 105.1–300.0 g/m ² (28 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index) Paper Weight 4–Paper Weight 7	A4 [□] , 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 [□]	*1
Label paper 52.3–300.0 g/m ² (14 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index) Paper Weight 1–Paper Weight 7	A4, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11	*1

*1 Do not stack paper over the limit mark. The maximum number of sheets you can set at once depends on the paper's thickness and condition.

Interposer of the perfect binder

2

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
90.0–300.0 g/m ² (24 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index) Paper Weight 3–Paper Weight 7	<p>Paper sizes that can be detected automatically:</p> <p> Region A</p> <p>A3☐, 13 × 19☐</p> <p> Region B</p> <p>11 × 17☐, 13 × 19☐</p>	200 sheets (max. paper stack height of 24 mm (0.95 inches)) × 2
90.0–300.0 g/m ² (24 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index) Paper Weight 3–Paper Weight 7	<p>Select the paper size using the Tray Paper Settings menu:</p> <p> Region A</p> <p>B4 JIS☐, 11 × 17☐, 8K☐, 12 × 18☐, 11 × 15☐, 13 × 19¹/₅☐, 12³/₅ × 19¹/₅☐, 12³/₅ × 18¹/₂☐, 13 × 18☐, SRA3☐, 310 × 432☐</p> <p> Region B</p> <p>A3☐, B4 JIS☐, 8K☐, 12 × 18☐, 11 × 15☐, 13 × 19¹/₅☐, 12³/₅ × 19¹/₅☐, 12³/₅ × 18¹/₂☐, 13 × 18☐, SRA3☐, 310 × 432☐</p>	200 sheets (max. paper stack height of 24 mm (0.95 inches)) × 2
90.0–300.0 g/m ² (24 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index) Paper Weight 3–Paper Weight 7	<p>Custom size:</p> <p> Region A</p> <p>Vertical: 257.0–330.2 mm Horizontal: 364.0–487.7 mm</p> <p> Region B</p> <p>Vertical: 10.12–13.00 inches Horizontal: 14.34–19.20 inches</p>	200 sheets (max. paper stack height of 24 mm (0.95 inches)) × 2

Paper type and weight	Paper size	Paper capacity
Coated: Glossy Coated: Matte 105.1–300.0 g/m ² (28 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index) Paper Weight 4–Paper Weight 7	Paper sizes that can be detected automatically:  Region A A3☐, 13 × 19☐  Region B 11 × 17☐, 13 × 19☐	*1
Coated: Glossy Coated: Matte 105.1–300.0 g/m ² (28 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index) Paper Weight 4–Paper Weight 7	Select the paper size using the Tray Paper Settings menu:  Region A B4 JIS☐, 11 × 17☐, 8K☐, 12 × 18☐, 11 × 15☐, 13 × 19 ¹ / ₅ ☐, 12 ³ / ₅ × 19 ¹ / ₅ ☐, 12 ³ / ₅ × 18 ¹ / ₂ ☐, 13 × 18☐, SRA3☐, 310 × 432☐  Region B A3☐, B4 JIS☐, 8K☐, 12 × 18☐, 11 × 15☐, 13 × 19 ¹ / ₅ ☐, 12 ³ / ₅ × 19 ¹ / ₅ ☐, 12 ³ / ₅ × 18 ¹ / ₂ ☐, 13 × 18☐, SRA3☐, 310 × 432☐	*1
Coated: Glossy Coated: Matte 105.1–300.0 g/m ² (28 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index) Paper Weight 4–Paper Weight 7	Custom size:  Region A Vertical: 257.0–330.2 mm Horizontal: 364.0–487.7 mm  Region B Vertical: 10.12–13.00 inches Horizontal: 14.34–19.20 inches	*1

*1 Do not stack paper over the limit mark. The maximum number of sheets you can set at once depends on the paper's thickness and condition.

Notes on Special Paper

Paper Type	Note
Setting envelopes	page 128 "Envelope Orientation and Recommended Status"
Setting label paper (adhesive labels)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> We recommend that you use specified label paper. If paper other than the specified one is used, normal operation and quality cannot be guaranteed. In the paper settings on the [Media] hub, specify [Labels] in [Paper Type], and specify an appropriate item from [Paper Weight].
Setting transparencies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When using transparencies, check their print sides carefully. Erroneous loading may cause problems. Remove copied or printed sheets one by one. Remove copied or printed sheets one by one. When loading a transparency on the paper tray, specify [Transparency] in [Paper Type] of the paper settings on the [Media] hub. Fan the sheets before loading them on the tray. If you leave the sheets stacked on the tray for a long time, they may stick together, and cause a misfeed to occur. When ejecting the printed sheets to High Capacity Stacker, specify the stacker upper tray as the output tray. See "Printer Settings", User Guide.
Setting translucent paper	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When loading translucent paper, always use long grain paper. Paper is classified in two different grain types: long grain and short grain. Load paper on the paper tray according to the recommended grain. Translucent paper easily absorbs humidity and becomes curled. Remove curl in the translucent paper before loading. Remove copied or printed sheets one by one.

Paper Type	Note
Setting coated paper	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When you load glossy paper, specify as follows in [Coated Paper] according to the type of paper in the paper settings on the [Media] hub, and specify an appropriate item from [Paper Weight]: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When using glossy coated paper, specify [Glossy]. When using matte-coated paper (including silk, dull, and satin paper), specify [Matte]. When using high-gloss coated paper, specify [High Gloss]. <p>For details about the settings for using coated paper with custom paper, see page 135 "Registering a Custom Paper".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When using coated or glossy paper, fan the paper before loading it. If a paper jam occurs, or you hear an abnormal noise, load paper one sheet at a time.
When loading colored paper	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Depending on the color of paper, the paper position may not be detected correctly, and a paper jam may occur. When using paper of a pale color, specify [Color] in [Paper Color] in the paper settings of the [Media] hub. When using black paper or paper of a dark color, or when a paper jam continues to occur even after specifying [Color] in [Paper Color], change [Paper Color] on the [Media] hub to [Black].
Setting carbonless paper	Carbonless paper can be used only when wide LCT is used along with Finisher or Booklet Finisher for post-processing.

Note

- A paper jam may occur when ejecting paper inverted or performing duplex printing depending on the paper weight and the direction of paper grain. When a paper jam occurs while using thick paper of long grain, cancel duplex printing and the setting for ejecting the paper inverted, or change the paper to paper of short grain or thinner paper.

Paper Weight for Each Paper Thickness

Paper Thickness ^{*1}	Metric	Bond paper	Cover paper	Index paper
Paper Weight ^{0*2}	40.0–52.2 g/m ²	10.6–13.8 lb. Bond	14.8–19.3 lb. Cover	22.1–28.8 lb. Index

Paper Thickness ^{*1}	Metric	Bond paper	Cover paper	Index paper
Paper Weight 1 ^{*2}	52.3–63.0 g/m ²	13.9–16.7 lb. Bond	19.4–23.3 lb. Cover	28.9–34.8 lb. Index
Paper Weight 2	63.1–80.0 g/m ²	16.8–21.2 lb. Bond	23.4–29.6 lb. Cover	34.9–44.2 lb. Index
Paper Weight 3	80.1–105.0 g/m ²	21.3–27.9 lb. Bond	29.7–38.8 lb. Cover	44.3–58.0 lb. Index
Paper Weight 4	105.1–163.0 g/m ²	28.0–43.3 lb. Bond	38.9–60.3 lb. Cover	58.1–90.0 lb. Index
Paper Weight 5	163.1–220.0 g/m ²	43.4–58.4 lb. Bond	60.4–81.4 lb. Cover	90.1–121.5 lb. Index
Paper Weight 6	220.1–256.0 g/m ²	58.5–68.0 lb. Bond	81.5–94.8 lb. Cover	121.6–141.4 lb. Index
Paper Weight 7	256.1–300.0 g/m ²	68.1–79.7 lb. Bond	94.9–111.0 lb. Cover	141.5–165.7 lb. Index
Paper Weight 8	300.1–360.0 g/m ²	79.8–95.7 lb. Bond	111.1–133.3 lb. Cover	165.8–198.9 lb. Index
Paper Weight 9 ^{*3}	360.1–470.0 g/m ²	95.8–125.0 lb. Bond	133.4–174.1 lb. Cover	199.0–259.7 lb. Index

*1 Print quality will decrease if the paper you are using is close to the minimum or maximum weight. Change the paper weight setting to thinner or thicker.

*2 When loading paper of 40.0–63.0 g/m² (11–17 lb. Bond), the edges may crease or the paper misfeed depending on the paper type.

*3 The paper brand of usable paper of 400 g/m² (106 lb. Bond) or more is specified. For details, contact your service representative.

Unusable Paper

CAUTION

- Do not use stapled sheets of paper, aluminum foil, carbon paper, or any kind of conductive paper. Doing so can result in fire.

Paper causing faults

Do not use any of the following kinds of treated paper. Doing so may cause faults.

- Thermal paper
- Carbon paper
- OHP transparencies
- Conductive paper including silver, metallic, and pearl paper

You can feed certain types of paper if it is tested and evaluated to be usable on the machine.

- Do not use the following types of paper. Using these types of paper may lead to poor print quality or a malfunction of the machine. Use verified paper only.
 - Paper with borders along the edges
The sensor in the machine may malfunction.
 - Inkjet printer paper
Heat in the fusing process may cause the coated material to melt, resulting in a malfunction.
 - Envelopes with a window
Heat applied in the printing process may cause the film in the window to melt, resulting in a malfunction.
 - Envelopes with glue
Glue may adhere to the inside of the machine, resulting in a malfunction. Also, the release paper may peel off inside the machine, resulting in a malfunction.
 - Paper with perforated lines
A problem with feeding paper or print quality may occur.

Paper causing paper jam

Do not use the following kinds of paper. It may cause a paper jam.

- Bent, folded, or creased paper
- Torn paper
- Paper with a dusty surface

Do not load paper in the following conditions on the perfect binder, interposer, or wide LCT. Doing so may cause the machine to malfunction.

- Heavily curled
- Bound by a staple or paper clip
- Ripped
- Cardstock
- Label paper ^{*1}

- Text or drawing penciled
- Creased

Printing on coarse or uneven paper may result in blurred images.

Do not load sheets that have already been printed onto by another machine. (Sheets can become jammed if they have been improperly stored.)

If you use paper curled by humidity or drying, the paper or staple may jam.

Do not load sheets that have already been printed onto by another machine. Doing so may interfere with loading of paper because the powder for preventing offset may attach to the paper roller.

Some kinds of colored paper cannot be used depending on the color of the paper. For details, contact your service representative.

* 1 These are supported by Interposer and wide LCT.

 **Note**

- A paper jam may occur depending on the condition of the paper even when using the recommended paper.

Paper Storage

Temperature, humidity, other environmental factors, and the method of paper storage all greatly affect the paper's condition.

The moisture content of paper changes as the temperature changes, causing the paper to curl and become wavy. It may also affect the paper length and cause shrinkage. The changes in the condition of the paper may cause paper jams, wrinkles or image misalignment on Sides 1 and 2.

When storing paper, the following precautions should always be followed:

- Do not store paper where it will be exposed to direct sunlight.
- Store all your paper in the same environment - a room where the temperature is 20–25°C (68–77°F) and the humidity is 30–65%.
- Store on a flat surface.
- Do not store paper vertically.
- If there is a large temperature difference between the storage area and the area near the machine, keep some paper near the machine for a few days before you use it, so it can adjust to the temperature near the machine.
- Once a package of paper is open, seal it completely in a plastic bag or moisture-proof paper to prevent it from absorbing moisture from the air.
- Do not expose the paper to direct sunlight.

- If stacking directions are indicated on paper boxes, stack the boxes according to the directions. Do not stack paper on end, even if it is still in the box.
- Do not place paper on the floor. Keep paper on a surface such as a palette, table, or cabinet in a temperature and humidity controlled room.
- Keep paper tightly sealed in a bag made of anti-humidity material even if the package of paper has not been opened yet. If sheets of paper are not stored in an anti-humidity bag, store them in a plastic bag and tightly seal it.

Saving Printouts

- Prints will fade if exposed to strong light or dampness and humidity for extended periods of time. Preserve the quality of your copies by storing them in a binder in a dark, dry place.
- When folding prints, toner in the folds will come off.
- If the prints are stored in the conditions described below, toner may melt:
 - When a print and a half-dried print are put on top of each other
 - When solvent-type adhesive agents are used for pasting prints
 - When prints are placed on mats made of chlorinated plastic in locations of high temperature for long periods of time
 - When prints are placed in locations of extremely high temperatures, such as near a heater

Envelope Orientation and Recommended Status

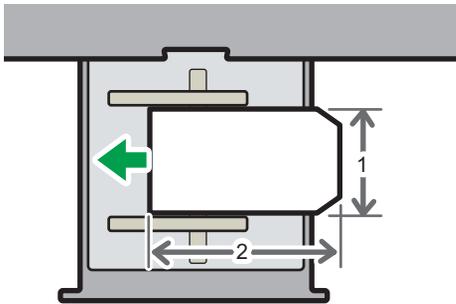
The way to place an original on the load envelopes varies depending on the shape and orientation of the envelopes.

★ Important

- Only envelopes that are at least 139.7 mm (5.5 inches) wide can be loaded.
- Misfeeds might occur depending on the length and shape of the flaps.

To print on envelopes, load them into the Wide LCT or multi bypass tray (Tray A), and be sure to specify an appropriate paper type.

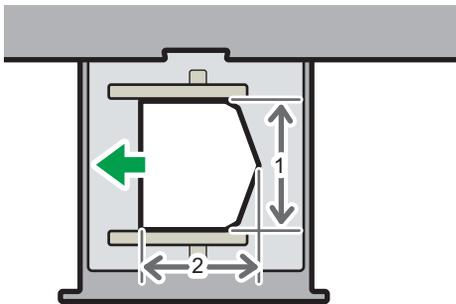
To load envelopes, be sure to unfold their flaps and set them in the  orientation with print side face up.



MOEDIM0511

1. Across the feed direction
2. Along the feed direction

If you are printing onto side-opening envelopes, be sure to unfold their flaps and set them in the  orientation with print side face up. Flaps must be at the right side of the Wide LCT or multi bypass tray (Tray A).



MOEDIM0512

1. Across the feed direction

2. Along the feed direction

Recommended envelopes

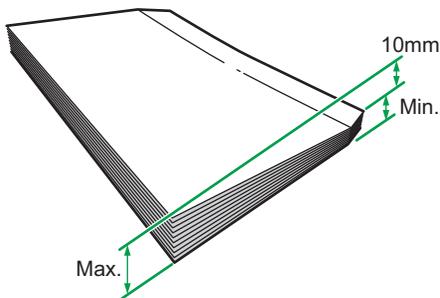
For information about recommended envelopes, contact your local dealer.

Storage of envelopes

Keep envelopes stored in sealed plastic bags and remove only the quantity needed. Do not add envelopes during printing, as this might cause misfeeds.

Loading envelopes on the wide LCT

- If a paper jam occurs, load 5 more envelopes.
- Keep the height difference between the bottom of the envelopes and flaps within 10 mm.



MOEDIM0513

Note

- Be sure to specify the size of the envelope and flap size in the paper settings on the [Media] hub.
- See page 99 "Specifying a Custom Size Paper".
- When using envelopes, set [Paper Weight] in the paper settings on the [Media] hub to the same value as two sheets of the paper used for the envelopes.
- Before loading envelopes, press down on them to remove any air inside and to flatten any edges or creases. When envelopes are curled, flatten the envelopes so that the amount of curling is less than 5 mm (0.2 inches). If a paper jam, non-feeding or double-feeding occurs even after correcting the curl, load one envelope at one time.
- Place one envelope at a time if you still get any of the following results:
 - The envelope jams
 - The envelope is not fed
 - Multiple envelopes are fed at the same time
- Humidity levels of over 50% can cause envelopes to come out creased or misprinted.
- Certain types of envelopes might come out creased, dirtied, or misprinted. If you are printing a solid color or image on an envelope, lines may appear where the overlapped edges of the envelope make it thicker.

- A paper jam may occur when you use an envelope with a horizontal length less than 205 mm (11.7 inches) with the flap opened (or less than 197 mm (7.7 inches) excluding the flap). If this occurs, cancel the skew detection setting in the paper setting of the [Media] hub ► [Detailed settings] ► 13: [Machine: Paper Feed/Output] ► [Jam Detection] ► [Detect/Control JAM097/098]. For details, see page 192 "1331: Jam Detection".
- When printing on envelopes with a thickness of 127.0 g/m² (34 lb. Bond) or more, do not specify [□ Curl Correction Level: Large] or [U Curl Correction Level: Large] in the paper settings of the [Media] hub ► [Detailed settings] ► 13: [Machine: Paper Feed/Output] ► [Correct Paper Curl].

3. Paper Settings

Registering a Custom Paper

Using the paper settings function of the machine, you can specify the paper type, size, weight and various other properties of paper that you want to use and register the settings as "Custom Paper". Also, you can achieve satisfactory printing results easily by specifying the paper settings for a commercially available paper brand that is widely used from the Master Paper.

Overview of Paper Settings

[Media] hub

You need to specify the paper sizes and types for paper trays in order to properly print on the paper loaded in the paper trays. You can configure these settings in the [Media] hub.

Master Paper

In Master Paper, the information including the paper type, weight, and detailed operating conditions of the machine suitable for the paper is registered and categorized by typical paper stocks and common paper types available on the market.

Download the setting file for Master Paper from the manufacturer's website, and then import it onto the machine to use it.

To use the settings in the master paper, you must first select the name or type of your paper from the master paper. The paper settings will be registered to a custom paper. The master paper makes it easy to get the best results from your paper.

Custom Paper

You can register the paper type, weight, and detailed operating conditions of the machine suitable for the paper independently per paper stock that you use as a Custom Paper.

This function is convenient because you can register certain types of paper that you often use as custom paper.

Custom Paper can also be set from the master paper.

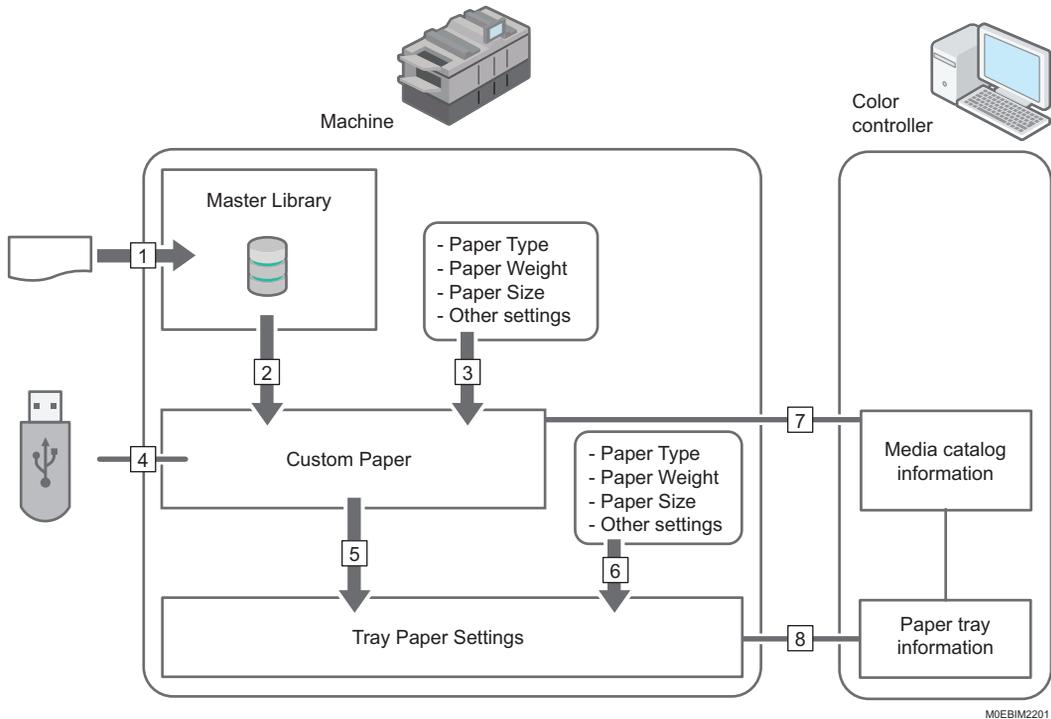
The machine automatically synchronizes the custom paper settings with the media catalog information on the color controller.

Use any of the procedures described below to register a Custom Paper.

- Select the paper's name or type from the master paper
- Modify a custom paper that has already been registered
- Manually specify the paper's type and weight

Under the custom paper's advanced settings, you can specify the machine operating conditions, toner transfer, and toner fusing conditions. The master paper contains the advanced settings that are preconfigured so that you do not need to configure them.

Types of Paper Settings



1. From the setting file, import the settings for Master Paper.
2. You can register the settings stored in the master paper to a custom paper.
3. You can register a custom paper by manually specifying the paper's type and weight.
4. You can import/export the settings of a custom paper from/to a USB memory.
5. You can configure the tray paper settings by assigning a custom paper to each paper tray.
6. You can configure the tray paper settings by manually specifying the paper's type and weight.
7. The machine automatically synchronizes the custom paper settings on the machine with the media catalog information on the color controller.
8. The machine automatically synchronizes the tray paper settings on the machine and the paper tray information on the color controller.

The procedures for making tray paper settings vary in the following examples depending on the functions that you want to use (the numbers added to the end of the following sentences correspond to the numbers in the illustration above):

To select the name or type of your paper from the master paper and configure the tray paper settings

Do the following procedure:

- Select the name or type of the paper from the master paper and register it as a custom paper (2)
page 136 "Selecting the Paper's Name from the Master Paper"
page 136 "Registering a Paper Whose Paper Name Is Not Displayed in the Master Paper"
- Assigning a paper tray to a paper on the [Media] hub (5)
page 154 "Specifying a Custom Paper on the Tray in the [Media] Hub"

To register a paper type and weight that is not included in the master paper as a custom paper and configure the tray paper settings

Do the following procedure:

- Register a custom paper by manually specifying the paper's type and weight (3)
page 136 "Registering a Paper Whose Paper Name Is Not Displayed in the Master Paper"
- Assigning a paper tray to a paper on the [Media] hub (5)
page 154 "Specifying a Custom Paper on the Tray in the [Media] Hub"

To assign a registered custom paper to a paper tray

Do the following procedure:

- Assigning a paper tray to a paper on the [Media] hub (5)
page 154 "Specifying a Custom Paper on the Tray in the [Media] Hub"

To manually specify the paper settings for a paper tray without using the custom paper

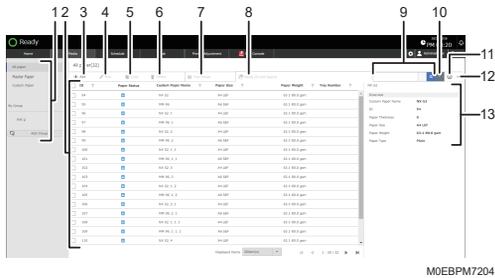
Do the following procedure:

- Manually specify the paper size and type for a paper tray in the [Home] hub (6)
page 155 "Specifying the General Settings on a Tray in the [Home] Hub"

↓ Note

- For details about the recommended paper for use with this machine, see page 101 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types".
- For details about the media catalog information, see the manual provided with the color controller.

How to Use the [Media] Hub



1. [All Paper], [Master Paper], [Custom Paper], [By Group]

Press one of these when managing paper.

[All Paper]: Press this to display all Master Paper and Custom Paper.

[Master Paper]: Press this to display all Master paper.

[Custom Paper]: Press this to display the Custom Paper that is registered on the machine.

[By Group]: Press this to manage Custom Paper by assigning them to Group. Press the name of a group to display the Custom Paper that is registered under the group.

2. List of Paper

Displays the list. To sort the displayed items, press the column title.

To select paper, select the check box at the start of the line. Select the check box in the column title to select all paper that is displayed in the list.

The "Paper Status" icons have the followings meanings:

-  : Master Paper
-  : A registered Custom Paper based on a Master Paper
-  : A registered Custom Paper based on a Master Paper with edited settings
-  : A newly created Custom Paper

3. [Add]

Press this to add a new paper setting.

page 135 "Registering a Custom Paper"

4. [Edit]

To edit a registered paper setting, select the check box of the paper, and then press this button.

page 146 "Modifying a Custom Paper"

5. [Copy]

To duplicate a registered paper setting, select the check box of the paper in the paper list, and then press this button.

page 136 "Selecting the Paper's Name from the Master Paper"

page 138 "Registering a New Custom Paper by Modifying an Existing Paper"

6. [Delete]

To delete a registered paper setting, select the check box of the paper in the paper list, and then press this button.

page 152 "Deleting a Custom Paper"

page 138 "Registering a New Custom Paper by Modifying an Existing Paper"

7. [Tray Assign]

To assign a paper tray to paper, select the check box of the paper in the paper list, and press this button.

page 154 "Specifying a Custom Paper on the Tray in the [Media] Hub"

8. [Media ID Unit Search]

Press this when you specify the custom paper on the paper tray using the media identification reader.

9. Search (🔍)

To search for paper, enter the search string in the input box, and then press 🔍.

10. Advanced search (🔍)

When you are searching for paper by its Manufacturer, Paper Weight, or other paper attributes, specify the search details, and then press 🔍.

page 148 "Searching for a Paper by Specifying the Conditions"

11. Show Info (ℹ️)

Press this to display the summary information of the specified paper.

12. Others (☰)

[Arrange Columns]: Press this to change the column title displayed in the paper list.

[Output Paper List]: Press this to output the list of paper settings.

[Import]: Press this to import a paper setting.

[Export]: Press this to export the paper setting that is selected in the list.

13. Paper Summary Information

When you press a line of paper in the paper list, "Custom Paper Name", "ID", "Paper Thickness", "Paper Size", "Paper Weight", and "Paper Type" of the selected paper are displayed. You can also see the information that you specified not to display in [Manage Columns]. To hide the information, press ✕.

Registering a Custom Paper

You can register up to 1000 custom papers.

Check the product name, size, and type of your paper before registering it.

Check that the size and type of your paper are compatible with the paper tray that you want to use. Tray compatibility depends on the paper's size and type.

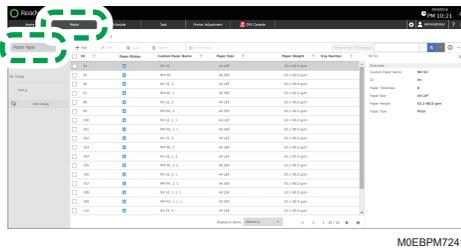
For details about the paper sizes and types that can be used, see page 101 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types".

Note

- When the number of registered custom papers reaches the maximum, you will not be able to register a new custom paper. Delete any unnecessary custom papers from the list, and then try registering again. For details, see page 152 "Deleting a Custom Paper".
- In "ID", an available number in ascending order starting with "1" is assigned. You can change the number on the "Advanced Settings" screen.

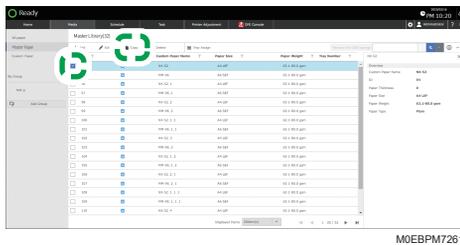
Selecting the Paper's Name from the Master Paper

1. Press the [Media] hub ► [Master Paper].



2. Select the check box of the paper to register, and then press [Copy].

You can specify more than one paper together at a time.



3. Press [OK].

The paper is registered as a "Custom Paper".

Registering a Paper Whose Paper Name Is Not Displayed in the Master Paper

If the paper you want is not in the library's paper list or you don't know the name of the paper, use the following procedures:

- Selecting the paper's type from the master paper

The master paper contains the optimum printing conditions not only for each commercially available paper but also for each type of paper.

You can select the type of paper from the master paper and register it as a custom paper even if you don't know the name of the paper. The selectable paper types are as follows: Plain Paper,

Recycled Paper, Label Paper, Tab Stock, Transparency, Translucent Paper, Envelope, Magnet Paper, Metallic/Pearl Paper, Clear File Folder, Synthetic Paper, Carbonless Paper. Each type is divided into several categories according to weight.

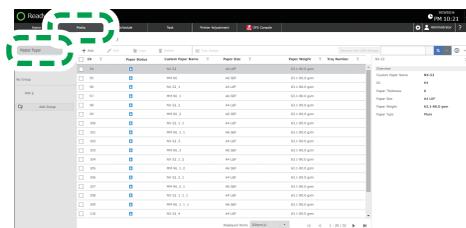
- Manually specifying a paper's type and weight

You can register a custom paper by manually specifying its type and weight.

Selecting the paper's type from the master paper

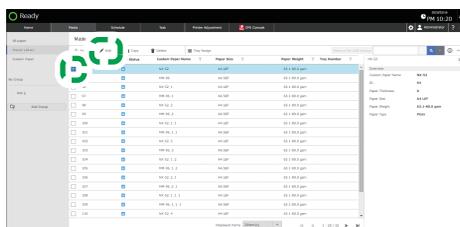
You can select the type of paper from the master paper and register it as a custom paper.

1. Press the [Media] hub ► [Master Paper].



MOEBPM7241

2. Select the check boxes of "Paper Weight" and "Paper Type" that match the paper to use as a reference, and then press [Edit].



MOEBPM7233

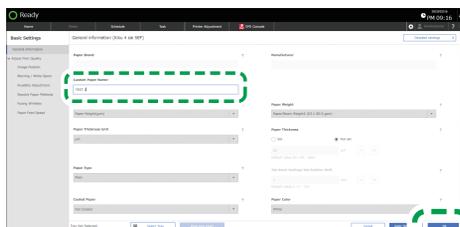
3. Select the check box of the paper size to specify, and then press [OK].

To specify all the paper sizes, select the check box of "Size".

When using a paper size that is not in the list, press [Add Size], and add the paper size to use.

4. Enter "Custom Paper Name", and then press [OK].

Change the paper information as required.



MOEBPM7202

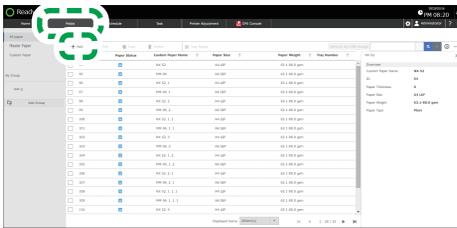
The paper is registered as a "Custom Paper".

Manually specifying a paper's type and weight

★ Important

- Select the items that will be applied to the paper for the various settings. If the paper to be used and the settings are different, a paper jam may result.

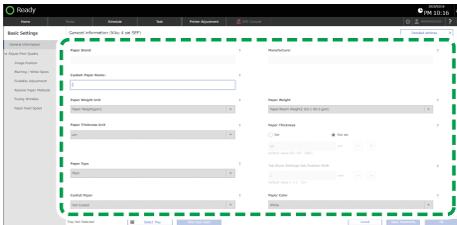
1. Press the [Media] hub ► [Add].



M0EBPM7242

2. Specify "Paper Size", and then press [OK].

3. Enter "Custom Paper Name", and specify the paper information.



M0EBPM7203

- Specify [Glossy] or [Matte] in "Coated Paper" when you are using Coated Paper (Glossy) or Coated Paper (Matte) including Silk, Dull, Satin Coated, and other types of paper.

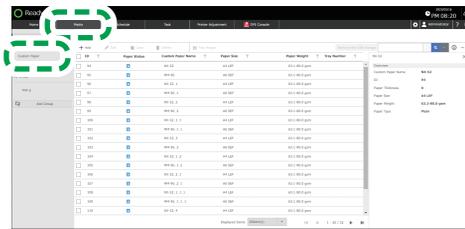
4. Press [OK].

The paper is registered as a "Custom Paper".

Registering a New Custom Paper by Modifying an Existing Paper

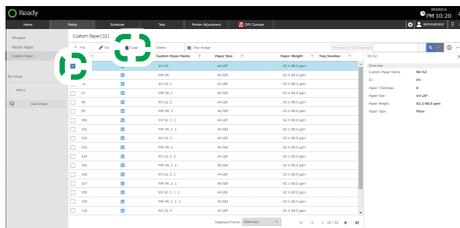
You can open and modify the settings of a registered custom paper and register them as a new custom paper.

1. Press the [Media] hub ► [Custom Paper].



MOEBPM7232

2. Select the check box of the paper to copy, and press [Copy].



MOEBPM7244

3. Press [OK].

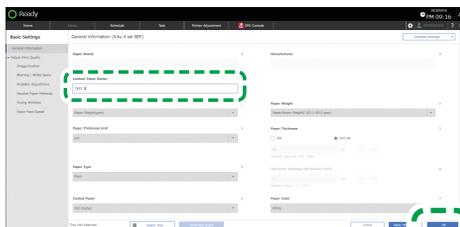
4. Select the check box of the paper size to specify, and then press [OK].

To specify all the paper sizes, select the check box of "Size".

When using a paper size that is not in the list, press [Add Size], and add the paper size to use.

5. Enter "Custom Paper Name", and then press [OK].

Change the paper information as required.



MOEBPM7202

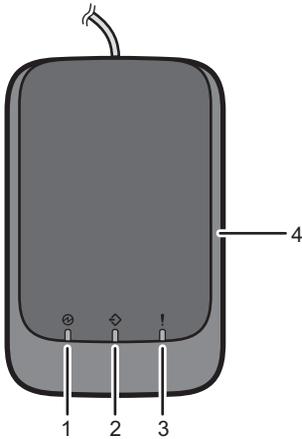
- Specify [Glossy] or [Matte] in "Coated Paper" when you are using Coated Paper (Glossy) or Coated Paper (Matte) including Silk, Dull, Satin Coated, and other types of paper.

The paper is registered as a "Custom Paper".

Registering a Custom Paper with the Media Identification Unit

When you scan paper on the media identification reader, the machine searches for the paper with the settings that are similar to the paper registered in Master Paper or Custom Paper, and displays it on the screen.

Part Names and Functions of the Media Identification Unit



DFZ012

1. Power lamp

Lights up when a USB cable is connected and the Media Identification Unit is ready to start scanning paper.

2. Scanning lamp

Lights up when paper is inserted into the scanning area.

After the paper is removed, it flashes while paper is being scanned.

3. Error lamp

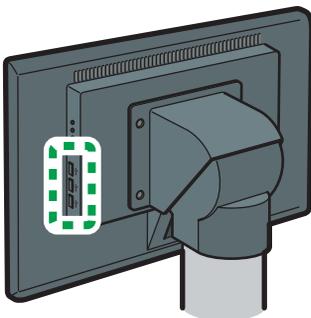
Lights up when an error occurs.

4. Paper scanning area

Insert the paper you want to scan here.

Connect the Media Identification Unit

1. Connect the USB cable to the USB host interface on the control panel of the machine.

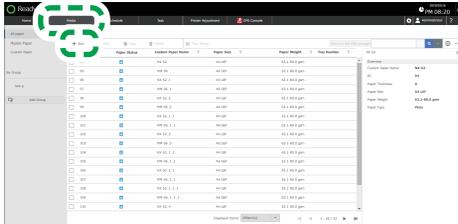


M0EDIM0202

How to Register Paper Scanned by the Media Identification Unit as Custom Paper

Registering a new custom paper with the Media Identification Unit

1. Press the [Media] hub ► [Add].

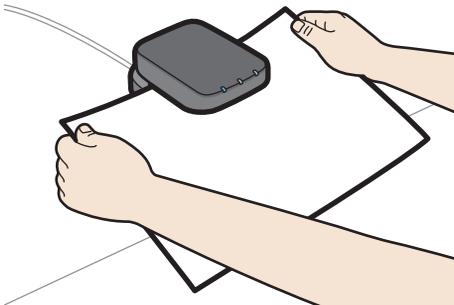


MOEBPM7242

2. Specify "Paper Size", and then press [OK].
3. Press [Media Identification Unit].
4. Specify "Custom Paper Name", "Paper Type", "Paper Color", "Prepunched".
5. Insert paper into the Media Identification Unit, and then remove it.

Hold the edges of the paper with both hands when inserting the paper.

Keep the paper flat as you pull it out.



D0CPIC2353

6. Press [OK] ► [OK].

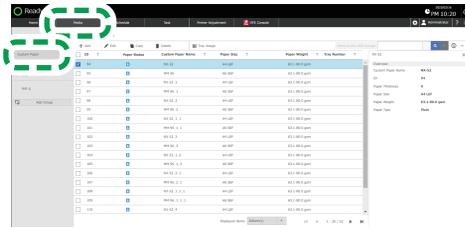
The information scanned from the paper is applied, and registered as a "Custom Paper".

Modifying the registered custom paper settings using the Media Identification Unit

★ Important

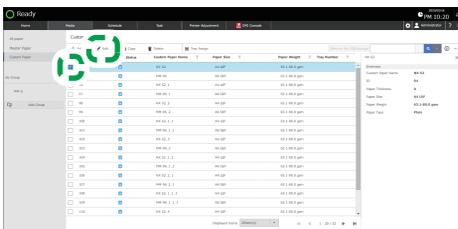
- You cannot change the settings of the paper that is already registered on a tray. Assign another paper to the tray on which the paper is assigned. For details, see page 154 "Changing Tray Paper Settings".
- The settings of the paper that is being edited on the color controller cannot be changed.

1. Press the [Media] hub ► [Custom Paper].



MOEBPM7243

2. Select the check box of the paper to copy, and press [Edit].



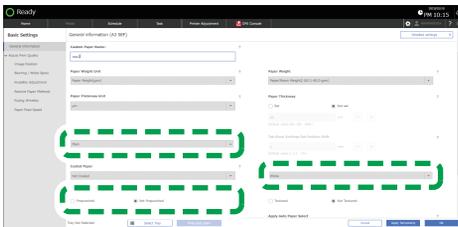
MOEBPM7247

3. Select the check box of the paper size to change, and then press [OK].

To specify all the paper sizes, select the check box of "Size".

When using a paper size that is not in the list, press [Add Size], and add the paper size to use.

4. Specify the settings if "Paper Type", "Paper Color", and "Prepunched" are not specified.



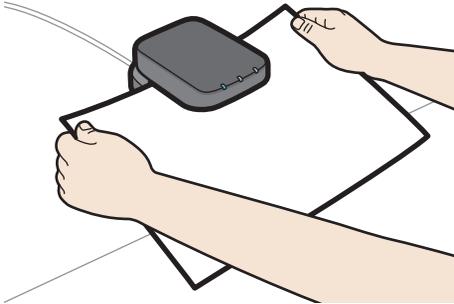
MOEBPM7206

5. Press [Media Identification Unit].

6. Insert paper into the Media Identification Unit, and then remove it.

Hold the edges of the paper with both hands when inserting the paper.

Keep the paper flat as you pull it out.



D0CPIC2353

7. Select [Overwrite Search Settings Only] or [Overwrite Search And Paper Settings], and then press [OK].

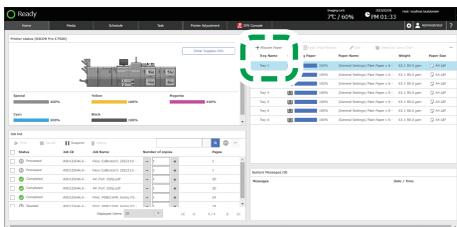
When you select [Overwrite Search Settings Only], the setting values in "Weight of Paper", "Coated Paper", "Textured", Adjust Print Quality", and Detailed settings" will not be overwritten.

8. Press [OK].

The information scanned from the paper is applied, and registered as a "Custom Paper".

Specifying a custom paper for paper trays with the Media Identification Unit

1. Press the [Home] hub.
2. In the [Tray Status] tile, specify the tray on which to change the paper settings, and then press [Paper Assignment].

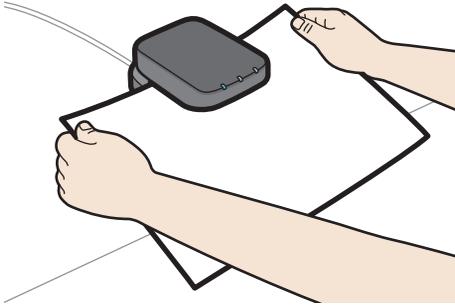


M0EBPM7214

3. Press the Advanced search ().
4. Press [Media Identification Unit].
5. Insert paper into the Media Identification Unit, and then remove it.

Hold the edges of the paper with both hands when inserting the paper.

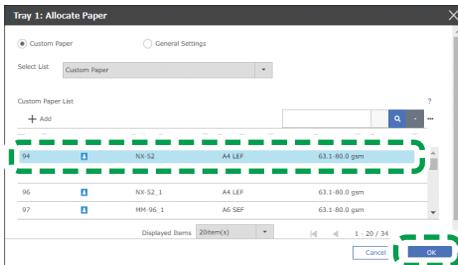
Keep the paper flat as you pull it out.



D0CPIC2353

The list of custom paper whose configurations are similar to those of the scanned paper appears.

6. Specify the custom paper to configure, and press [OK].



M0EDPM7215

7. Select the check box of the paper to register, and press [OK].

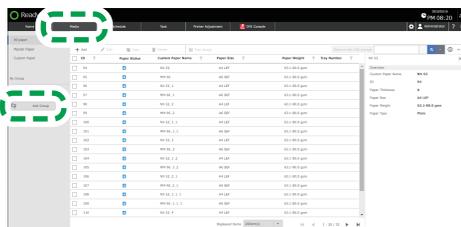
The selected paper is assigned to the tray.

Creating a Group to Manage Paper

You can manage custom paper by assigning the paper to groups.

Creating a Group

1. Press the [Media] hub ► [Add Group].



M0EBPM7249

2. Enter the Name of the Group, and then press [OK].

The Group is registered.

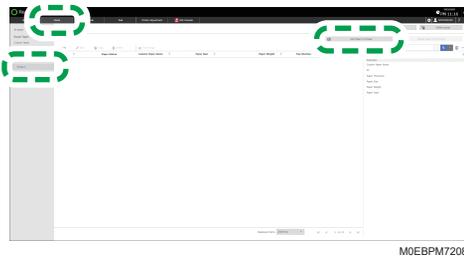
↓ Note

- To add a sub-group to a group, specify the group, and then press [Add Paper to Group].

Registering a Custom Paper to a Group

Register a registered Custom Paper to a group.

1. Press [Media] hub ▶ Group to register the paper ▶ [Add Paper to Group].



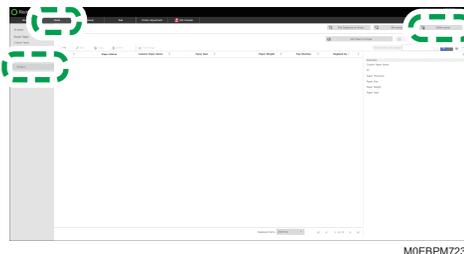
2. Select the check box of the paper to add, and press [OK].

↓ Note

- You can register new paper to a group.
- page 135 "Registering a Custom Paper"
- To delete paper in a group, select the check box of the paper, and then press [Delete Paper from Group]. Even when you delete a paper from a group, it remains in [Custom Paper].

Deleting a Group

1. Press the [Media] hub ▶ Group to delete ▶ [Delete group].



2. Press [OK].

Modifying a Custom Paper

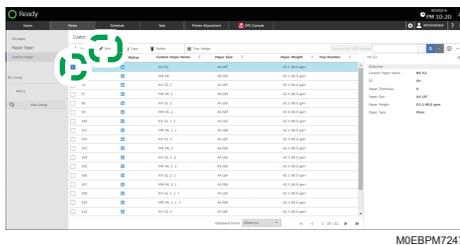
★ Important

- You cannot change the settings of the paper that is already registered on a tray. Assign another paper to the tray on which the paper is assigned. For details, see page 154 "Changing Tray Paper Settings".
- The settings of the paper that is being edited on the color controller cannot be changed.

1. Press the [Media] hub.

You can also press [Custom Paper] or Group, and select the paper to edit from either list.

2. Select the check box of the paper whose settings you want to edit, and press [Edit].



MOEBPM7247

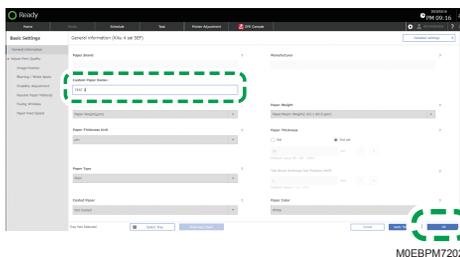
3. Select the check box of the paper size to change, and then press [OK].

To specify all the paper sizes, select the check box of "Size".

When using a paper size that is not in the list, press [Add Size], and add the paper size to use.

4. Enter "Custom Paper Name", and then press [OK].

Change the paper information as required.



MOEBPM7202

- Specify [Glossy] or [Matte] in "Coated Paper" when you are using Coated Paper (Glossy) or Coated Paper (Matte) including Silk, Dull, Satin Coated, and other types of paper.

The setting is changed.

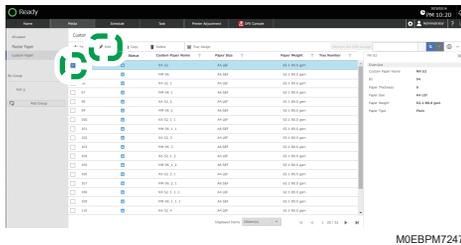
Adding a Paper Size to Custom Paper

Add a new paper size to Custom Paper when using paper of the Weight of Paper, Paper Weight, and other paper attributes that are the same as the one registered in Custom Paper, but differs in its paper size.

1. Press the [Media] hub.

Press [Custom Paper] or a group to specify the size from each list.

2. Select the check box of the paper to add a new paper size, and then press [Edit].

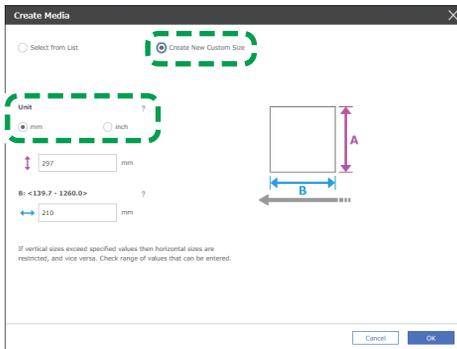


3. Press [Add Size].

4. Specify a paper size, and then press [OK].

When Adding a Paper Size That Is Not Listed

1. Specify [Create New Custom Size], and then Specify "Unit".



2. Enter the paper size, and then press [OK].

5. Press [OK].

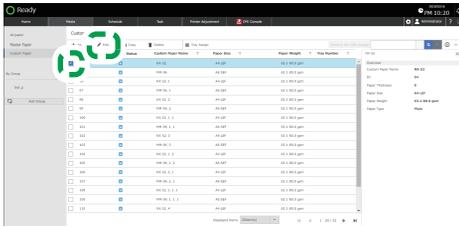
The newly specified paper size is added to Custom Paper.

Deleting a Paper Size

1. Press the [Media] hub.

Press [Custom Paper] or a group to specify the size from each list.

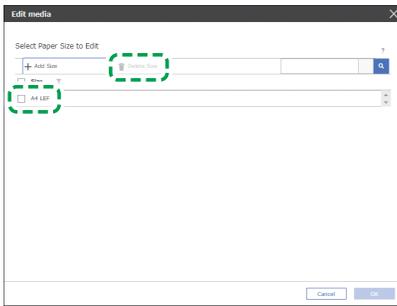
2. Select the check box of the paper to delete a paper size, and then press [Edit].



MOEBPM7247

3

3. Select the check box of the paper size to delete, and then press [Delete Size].



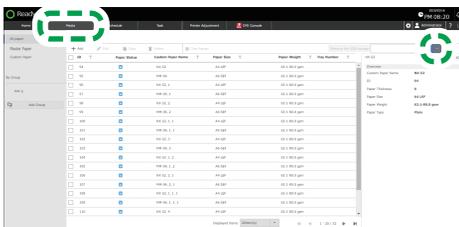
MOEBPM7210

4. Press [OK] ► [Cancel].

The selected paper size is deleted from Custom Paper.

Searching for a Paper by Specifying the Conditions

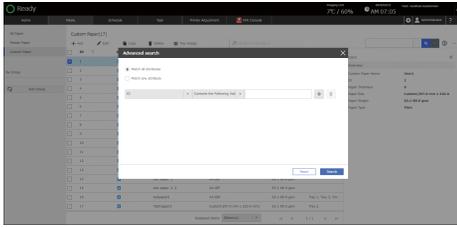
1. Press the [Media] hub ► Advanced search (■).



MOEBPM7248

Press [Custom Paper] or Group, and search for an item on each list.

2. Specify the search condition, and select its check box.



- Match all attributes / Match any attribute: Specify whether to search for paper that matches all specified attributes, or matches any of them.
- ID: Specify the category to search.
- Contains the Following Value/Exact Match with the Following Value: Specify whether to search paper with the setting that contains or match completely with the string entered in the input box.

3. Press [Search].

A list of paper that matches the specified search condition is displayed.

The list of all paper appears when you press Advanced Search () ► [Reset].

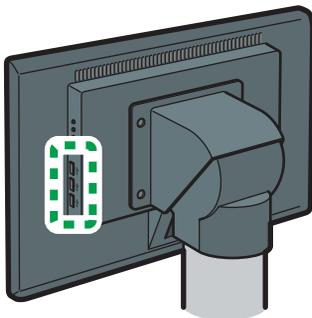
3

Exporting the Settings of a Custom Paper to a File in CSV Format

CAUTION

- Keep USB flash memory devices out of reach of children. If a child accidentally swallows an USB flash memory device, consult a doctor immediately.

1. Insert a USB memory into a USB host interface on the control panel of the machine.



M0EDIM0202

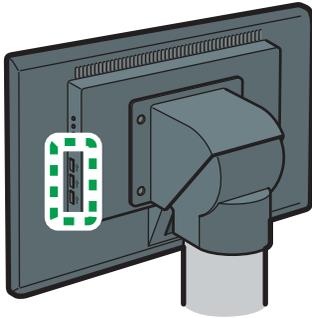
2. Press the [Media] hub.

3. Select the check box of the paper setting to export the settings.

Press [Custom Paper] or a group to specify the size from each list.

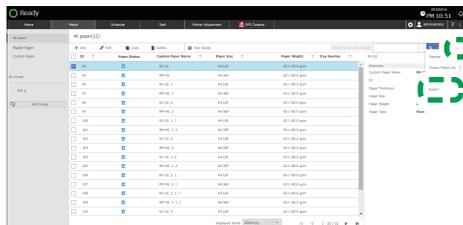
Exporting the Settings

1. Insert a USB memory into a USB host interface on the control panel of the machine.



MOEDIM0202

2. Press the [Media] hub.
3. Select the check box of the Paper Setting to Export.
Press [Custom Paper] or a group to specify the size from each list.
To select all the paper in the list, select the check box in the column title.
4. Press [***] ► [Export].



MOEBPM7212

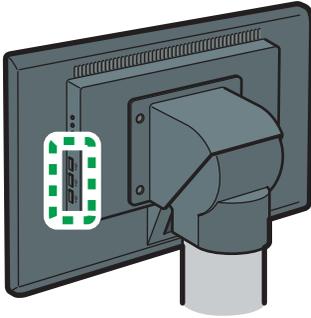
5. Enter the file name, and then press [OK].
6. Specify the location to save the file, and press [OK].

The settings of the Custom Paper are saved to the USB memory.

When the paper setting is assigned to a tray in "General Settings", the setting is saved to "General Settings" as well.

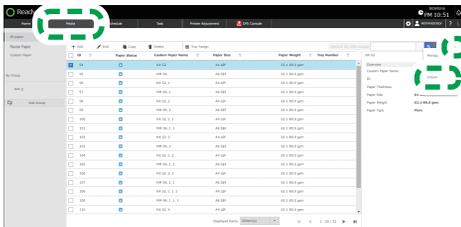
Importing the Settings

1. Insert the USB memory in which the file of the exported data is saved into a USB host interface on the control panel of the machine.



M0EDIM0202

2. Press the [Media] hub ► [***] ► [Import].



M0EBPM7213

3. Specify the file in which the paper setting is saved, and then press [OK].
4. Specify the paper to import, and press [OK].

The imported setting is applied to the machine.

Note

- You can create a backup the paper settings as well while creating a backup of the system settings. For details, see "Creating a Backup of/Restoring the Setting Information", User Guide.

Deleting a Custom Paper

Important

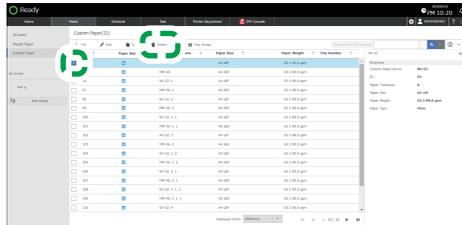
- You cannot change the settings of the paper that is already assigned to a tray. Assign another paper to the tray on which the paper is assigned. For details, see page 154 "Changing Tray Paper Settings".
- The settings of the paper that is being used on the color controller cannot be changed.

1. Press the [Media] hub.

Press [Custom Paper] or Group to delete the item in each list.

2. Select the check box of the paper to delete, and press [Delete].

Select the check box in the column title to select all paper that is displayed in the list.



MOEBPM7254

3. Press [OK].

The Custom Paper is deleted.

Changing Tray Paper Settings

In the [Media] hub, or on the [Tray Status] tile in the [Home] hub, assign a Custom Paper to a tray. You can also assign a paper type or paper weight individually to a tray on the [Tray Status] tile in the [Home] hub.

When you are finished specifying the paper settings, load the paper of the specified size and type onto the tray.

★ Important

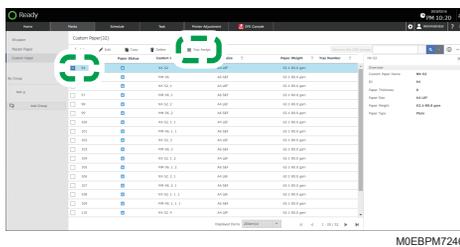
- If the specified size differs from the actual size of the paper loaded in the paper tray, a misfeed might occur because the correct paper size is not detected.
- If the specified paper type differs from the actual type of paper that is loaded in the paper tray, the paper might misfeed, the toner might not fuse properly, or the print quality might be reduced.
- Paper that can be specified on a tray varies depending on the tray. You cannot specify paper that is not supported on the tray.

Specifying a Custom Paper on the Tray in the [Media] Hub

1. Press the [Media] hub.

You can also press [Custom Paper] or Group, and select the paper to edit from either list.

2. Select the check box of the paper to specify on the tray, and press [Tray Assign].



M0EBPM7246

3. If required, press [Select Paper Size], and specify a paper size.

You can change the paper size when specifying a Custom Paper in which more than one paper sizes are registered.

4. Select the check box of the tray on which to specify the paper, and press [OK].

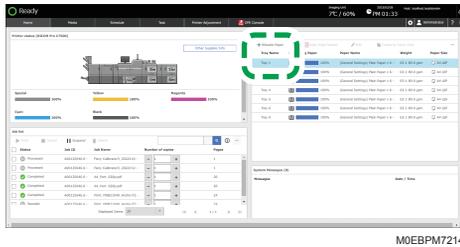
5. Press [OK].

The paper tray is now specified with the selected Custom Paper.

Specifying a Custom Paper on the Tray in the [Home] Hub

1. Press the [Home] hub.

2. On the [Tray Status] tile, specify the tray to change the paper setting, and then press [Allocate Paper].

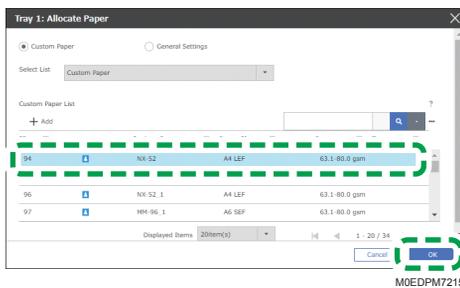


MOEBPM7214

3. Specify [Custom Paper].

The Custom Paper that is registered in the [Media] hub is displayed.

4. When using a Custom Paper that belongs to a grope on the [Media] hub, specify the group in "Select List".
5. Specify a Custom Paper to configure, and then press [OK].



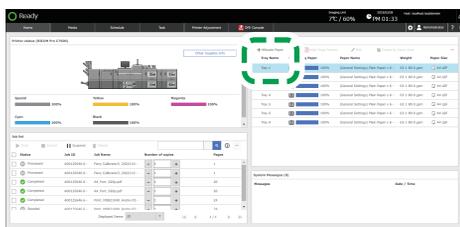
MOEDPM7215

6. Select the check box of the paper size to register, and then press [OK].

The Custom Paper of the selected paper size is assigned to the tray.

Specifying the General Settings on a Tray in the [Home] Hub

1. Press the [Home] hub.
2. On the [Tray Status] tile, specify the tray to change the paper setting, and then press [Allocate Paper].



MOEBPM7214

3. Specify [General Settings].

4. Specify "Paper Type" and "Weight of Paper".

When changing the paper size, press [Change Paper Size], and specify the paper size.

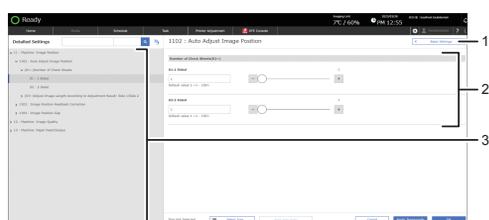
5. Press [OK].

The settings are applied to the tray.

4. Adjustment Setting Items for a Custom Paper

Detailed Settings Screen for a Custom Paper

This section describes how to operate on the "Detailed Settings" screen.



MOEBPM7218

1. [Basic Settings]

Displays the setting screen of [General information].

2. Setting Screen

Specify or modify the adjustment item.

3. Displays the list of groups

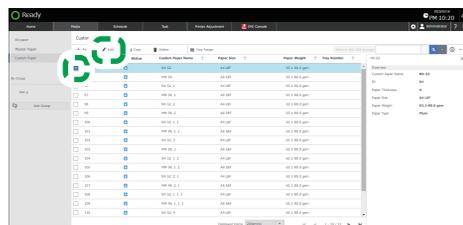
Select the group to display the adjustment setting that belongs to the group, and select the adjustment setting to display its current setting. When you select the adjustment setting whose value can be specified or modified, the setting screen appears to the right.

Procedure for Specifying the Detailed Settings of a Custom Paper

1. Press the [Media] hub.

Press [Master Paper] or Group, and specify the settings in each list.

2. Select the check box of the paper to specify the settings, and press [Edit].



MOEBPM7247

3. Select the check box of the paper size to adjust, and then press [OK].

4. Press [Detailed settings].

5. Specify a group and item to be adjusted, and specify the setting.

The procedure varies depending on the adjustment item. For details, see page 158 "Specifying the Detailed Settings of a Custom Paper".

6. Press [OK].

Specifying the Detailed Settings of a Custom Paper

There are several ways to adjust the settings of items as follows:

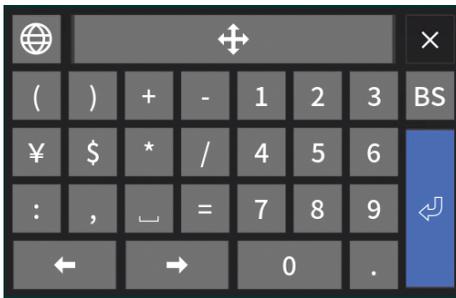
- Specifying a value
- Specifying a setting item
- Selecting to execute an adjustment

Specifying a value

Press [+], or [-], or move the slider left or right to decrease or increase the value. You can also use the numeric keypad to enter a value.



A numeric keypad appears when you select an input box. Press a key on the keypad to enter a value.



- [BS]: Press this to erase the entered value one character at a time.
- : Press this to fix the entered value.

Specifying a setting item

Select an item to be modified. When the item is in a pop-up menu, press , and then specify the item.

- Off
- On *

11: Machine: Image Position

1102: Auto Adjust Image Position

Number of Check Sheets

Set the number of check sheets to be printed when Auto Adjust Image Position is executed.

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: 1 Sided/02: 2 Sided	100	1	1	None

4

Adjust Image Length According to Adjustment Result: Side 1/Side 2

Adjusts for the deviations in image length in the paper feed direction that occurs as a result of the automatic image position adjustment. The adjustment results are applied on both the front and back sides.

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
03: With Feed	5	-5	0.01	mm

1103: Image Position Feedback Correction

When you use Image Position Feedback Correction, execute [Auto Adjust Image Position] in advance.

Correction Mode

Select the mode for Image Position Feedback Correction. When [No Detection Mark] is specified, the image position is corrected based on the shape of the paper. When [Detection Mark] is specified, the detection marks are printed in the corners, and the image position is corrected based on those marks and the shape of the paper. Specify [Correction Off] when no adjustment is needed.

Setting Item	Values
01: Setting	Correction Off No Detection Mark Detection Mark

1104: Image Position Gap

To adjust the position manually, use 1104 [Image Position Gap].

Image Position: Side 1/Image Position: Side 2

Adjust the vertical/horizontal position of the image to be printed on side 1/2 of the paper.

If J33 occurs, adjust the values by 1 mm toward the [+] side to widen the margins. Adjust the value carefully for wider margin improves the separation of paper in the fusing unit, but may degrade the deviation in image position.

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Across Feed/02: With Feed/03: Across Feed/04: With Feed	3	-3	0.01	mm

4

Image Magnification: Side 1/Image Magnification: Side 2

Adjust the vertical/horizontal image scaling on the side 1/2 of the paper according to the paper expansion or shrinkage.

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
05: Across Feed/07: Across Feed	0.5	-0.5	0.001	%
06: With Feed/08: With Feed			0.025	

Trapezoidal Distortion: Side 1/Trapezoidal Distortion: Side 2

Adjust the perpendicularity (image magnification of trailing edge with across feed direction) of side 1/2.

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
09: Operator Side/10: Opposite Side of Operator/11: Operator Side/12: Opposite Side of Operator	0.34	-0.34	0.001	%

12: Machine: Image Quality

1201: Max Image Density

Adjust the maximum image density for each color.

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Black/02: Cyan/03: Magenta/04: Yellow/05: Clear/Special/06: White/07: Metallic/08: Option	5	-5	1	None

4

1211: Image Transfer Output: Default

BW

Specify the output reference value for primary transfer in the following conditions:

Black & White print

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Black	160	0	1	μA

FC/FCS

Specify the output reference value for primary transfer for each color in the following conditions:

Full Color print/Full Color print with a special color

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
02: Black/03: Cyan/04: Magenta/05: Yellow/06: Clear/Special/07: White/08: Metallic/09: Option	160	0	1	μA

S

Adjust the output compensation amount and range at the leading edge of paper for secondary transfer in the following conditions:

Single-color print in a special color

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
10: Clear/Special/11: White/12: Metallic/13: Option	160	0	1	μA

1212: Image Transfer Output

[BW]

Under the following conditions, adjust the output of the image transfer.

Black & White Printing

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Black	10	-10	1	None

FC/FCS

Under the following conditions, adjust the output of the image transfer for each color.

Full Color Printing/Full Color Printing including Special Color

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
02: Black/03: Cyan/04: Magenta/05: Yellow/06: Clear/Special/07: White/08: Metallic/09: Option	10	-10	1	None

S

Under the following conditions, adjust the output of the image transfer.

Printing using Special Color Only

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
10: Clear/Special/11: White/12: Metallic/13: Option	10	-10	1	None

1213: Paper Transfer Output: Default

BW

Under the following conditions, set the standard output of the paper transfer.

Black & White Printing

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Side 1: DC Mode/02: Side 2: DC Mode/03: Side 1: AC Mode: DC/04: Side 2: AC Mode: DC	0	-400	1	μA
05: Side 1: AC Mode: AC/06: Side 2: AC Mode: AC	8	3	0.1	kV
07: Side 1: AC Mode: Textured Paper/08: Side 2: AC Mode: Textured Paper	14	0		

4

FC

Under the following conditions, set the standard output of the paper transfer.

Full Color Printing

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
09: Side 1: DC Mode/10: Side 2: DC Mode/11: Side 1: AC Mode: DC/12: Side 2: AC Mode: DC	0	-400	1	μA
13: Side 1: AC Mode: AC/14: Side 2: AC Mode: AC	8	3	0.1	kV
15: Side 1: AC Mode: Textured Paper/16: Side 2: AC Mode: Textured Paper	14	0		

FCS

Under the following conditions, set the standard output of the paper transfer.

Full Color Printing with Special Colors

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
17: Side 1: DC Mode/18: Side 2: DC Mode/19: Side 1: AC Mode: DC/20: Side 2: AC Mode: DC	0	-400	1	μA
21: Side 1: AC Mode: AC/22: Side 2: AC Mode: AC	8	3	0.1	kV
23: Side 1: AC Mode: Textured Paper/24: Side 2: AC Mode: Textured Paper	14	0		

4

S

Under the following conditions, set the standard output of the paper transfer.

Single Color Printing of a Special Color

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
25: Side 1: DC Mode: Clear/Special/26: Side 1: DC Mode: White/27: Side 1: DC Mode: Metallic/28: Side 1: DC Mode: Option/29: Side 2: DC Mode: Clear/Special/30: Side 2: DC Mode: White/31: Side 2: DC Mode: Metallic/32: Side 2: DC Mode: Option/33: Side 1: AC Mode: DC: Clear/Special/34: Side 1: AC Mode: DC: White/35: Side 1: AC Mode: DC: Metallic/36: Side 1: AC Mode: DC: Option/37: Side 2: AC Mode: DC: Clear/Special/38: Side 2: AC Mode: DC: White/39: Side 2: AC Mode: DC: Metallic/40: Side 2: AC Mode: DC: Option	0	-400	1	μA

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
41: Side 1: AC Mode: AC: Clear/ Special/42: Side 1: AC Mode: AC: White/43: Side 1: AC Mode: AC: Metallic/44: Side 1: AC Mode: AC: Option/45: Side 2: AC Mode: AC: Clear/ Special/46: Side 2: AC Mode: AC: White/47: Side 2: AC Mode: AC: Metallic/48: Side 2: AC Mode: AC: Option	8	3	0.1	kV
49: Side 1: AC Mode: Textured Paper: Clear/Special/50: Side 1: AC Mode: Textured Paper: White/51: Side 1: AC Mode: Textured Paper: Metallic/52: Side 1: AC Mode: Textured Paper: Option/53: Side 2: AC Mode: Textured Paper: Clear/ Special/54: Side 2: AC Mode: Textured Paper: White/55: Side 2: AC Mode: Textured Paper: Metallic/56: Side 2: AC Mode: Textured Paper: Option	14	0		

1214: Paper Transfer Output

Fine-tune the electricity current to apply when transferring toner onto paper.

If the area filled in a solid color appear grainy, adjust the value by 2 toward the [+] side. If the image in half-tones appear grainy, adjust it by 2 toward the [-] side.

BW

Under the following conditions, adjust the paper transfer output.

Black & White Printing

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Side 1/02: Side 2/03: Side 1: AC/04: Side 2: AC	10	-10	1	None

FC/FCS

Under the following conditions, adjust the paper transfer output.

Full Color Printing/Full Color Printing including Special Color

High Quality is not applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
05: Side 1/06: Side 2/07: Side 1: AC/08: Side 2: AC	10	-10	1	None

4

FCS

Under the following conditions, adjust the paper transfer output.

Full Color Printing including Special Color

High Quality is applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
09: Side 1/10: Side 2/11: Side 1: AC/12: Side 2: AC	10	-10	1	None

S

Under the following conditions, adjust the paper transfer output.

Printing using Special Color Only

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
13: Side 1: Clear/Special/14: Side 1: White/15: Side 1: Metallic/16: Side 1: Option/17: Side 2: Clear/Special/18: Side 2: White/19: Side 2: Metallic/20: Side 2: Option/21: Side 1: AC: Clear/ Special/22: Side 1: AC: White/23: Side 1: AC: Metallic/24: Side 1: AC: Option/25: Side 2: AC: Clear/ Special/26: Side 2: AC: White/27: Side 2: AC: Metallic/28: Side 2: AC: Option	10	-10	1	None

1215: Paper Transfer Output Correction: Paper Edge: Default

BW

Specify the output reference value for secondary transfer on the leading or trailing edge of paper in the following conditions:

Black & White print

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Leading Edge: DC Mode/02: Leading Edge: AC Mode: DC/04: Trailing Edge: DC Mode/05: Trailing Edge: AC Mode: DC/06: Trailing Edge: AC Mode: AC	300	5	1	%
03: Pre-Transfer Voltage	12	0	0.1	kV

4

FC/FCS

Specify the output reference value for secondary transfer on the leading or trailing edge of paper in the following conditions:

Fill Color print/Full Color print with a special color

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
07: Leading Edge: DC Mode/08: Leading Edge: AC Mode: DC/10: Trailing Edge: DC Mode/11: Trailing Edge: AC Mode: DC/12: Trailing Edge: AC Mode: AC	300	5	1	%
09: Pre-Transfer Voltage	12	0	0.1	kV

S

Specify the output reference value for secondary transfer on the leading or trailing edge of paper in the following conditions:

Single-color print in a special color

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
13: Leading Edge: DC Mode: Clear/ Special/14: Leading Edge: DC Mode: White/15: Leading Edge: DC Mode: Metallic/16: Leading Edge: DC Mode: Option/17: Leading Edge: AC Mode: DC: Clear/Special/18: Leading Edge: AC Mode: DC: White/19: Leading Edge: AC Mode: DC: Metallic/20: Leading Edge: AC Mode: DC: Option/25: Trailing Edge: DC Mode: Clear/Special/26: Trailing Edge: DC Mode: White/27: Trailing Edge: DC Mode: Metallic/28: Trailing Edge: DC Mode: Option/29: Trailing Edge: AC Mode: DC: Clear/Special/30: Trailing Edge: AC Mode: DC: White/31: Trailing Edge: AC Mode: DC: Metallic/32: Trailing Edge: AC Mode: DC: Option/33: Trailing Edge: AC Mode: AC: Clear/Special/34: Trailing Edge: AC Mode: AC: White/35: Trailing Edge: AC Mode: AC: Metallic/36: Trailing Edge: AC Mode: AC: Option	300	5	1	%
21: Pre-Transfer Voltage: Clear/ Special/22: Pre-Transfer Voltage: White/23: Pre-Transfer Voltage: Metallic/24: Pre-Transfer Voltage: Option	12	0	0.1	kV

1216: Paper Transfer Output Correction: Paper Edge

BW

Under the following conditions, set the standard value of the leading/trailing edge correction of paper transfer output.

Black & White Printing

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Leading Edge/03: Trailing Edge/04: Trailing Edge: AC	10	-10	1	None
02: Leading Edge Length	30	0		mm
05: Trailing Edge Length	100			

FC/FCS

Under the following conditions, set the standard value of the leading/trailing edge correction of paper transfer output.

Full Color Printing/Full Color Printing including Special Color

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
06: Leading Edge/08: Trailing Edge/09: Trailing Edge: AC	10	-10	1	None
07: Leading Edge Length	30	0		mm
10: Trailing Edge Length	100			

S

Under the following conditions, set the standard value of the leading/trailing edge correction of paper transfer output.

Printing using Special Color Only

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
11: Leading Edge: Clear/Special/12: Leading Edge: White/13: Leading Edge: Metallic/14: Leading Edge: Option/19: Trailing Edge: Clear/Special/20: Trailing Edge: White/21: Trailing Edge: Metallic/22: Trailing Edge: Option/23: Trailing Edge: AC: Clear/Special/24: Trailing Edge: AC: White/25: Trailing Edge: AC: Metallic/26: Trailing Edge: AC: Option	10	-10	1	None
15: Leading Edge Len.: Clear/Special/16: Leading Edge Len.: White/17: Leading Edge Length: Metallic/18: Leading Edge Length: Option	30	0		mm
27: Trailing Edge Len.: Clear/Special/28: Trailing Edge Len.: White/29: Trailing Edge Length: Metallic/30: Trailing Edge Length: Option	100			

1218: Paper Transfer Output

Specify the Output Mode that matches the paper. Use [Special Paper] when using metallic or other special paper.

Setting Item	Values
01: Output Mode	Special Paper Normal Textured Paper

1222: Paper Transfer Nip Operation Mode

Adjust shock when paper fed through PTRoller. Higher value (1->4) higher reduction. Leading edge density may be less. * Low pressure mode can be used only for the job using one paper type.

Setting Item	Values
01: Setting	Off Mode 1 Mode 2 Mode 3 Mode 4 Low Pressure Mode

1223: Paper Transfer Nip

4

Adjust setting below when [Paper Transfer Nip Operation Mode] is set.

Timing of contact & disengage of paper transfer roller/Gap of disengagement/Reduced pressure when low pressure mode is set

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: On Timing	5	-30	1	step
02: Off Timing	0	-100		
03: Adjust Gap	40	12		
04: Pressure Reduced	44	4		

1224: Paper Transfer Pressure Mode

Specify the pressure to apply when transferring toner onto paper. In normal operation, use [Standard Mode]. If mis-transfer of toner occurs on uneven paper, change the setting in steps from [Standard Mode], [Higher Pressure Mode] to [Highest Pressure Mode].

Setting Item	Values
01: Setting	Standard Mode Higher Pressure Mode Highest Pressure Mode

1225: Paper Transfer Pressure

Adjust for the deviation in pressure when transferring toner onto paper.

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Operator Side/02: Opposite Side of Operator	50	-50	1	step

1227: Paper Transfer Roller Reverse Rotation

Adjust the interval to execute smoothing paper transfer cleaning belt. (When the value is set to 0, smoothing is not executed.) Shorten the interval when using paper with a lot of paper dust.

If the value is set to other than 0, productivity will be reduced.

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Setting	2,000	0	100	Page

1231: Print Speed

BW/FC/FCS

Under the following conditions, set the print speed.

Black & White Printing/Full Color Printing/Full Color Printing including Special Color

High Quality is not applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Values
01: BW/FC/FCS	High Middle Low

FCS

Under the following conditions, set the print speed.

Full Color Printing including Special Color

High Quality is applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Values
02: Clear/Special/03: White/04: Metallic/05: Option	High Middle Low

S

Under the following conditions, set the print speed.

Printing using Special Color Only

High Quality is applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Values
06: Clear/Special/07: White/08: Metallic/09: Option	High Middle Low

4

BW/FC/FCS: Fuser Setting HQ

Under the following conditions, set the print speed.

Black & White Printing/Full Color Printing/Full Color Printing including Special Color

High Quality is not applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Values
10: BW/FC/FCS	High Middle Low

FCS: Fuser Setting HQ

Under the following conditions, set the print speed.

Full Color Printing including Special Color

High Quality is applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Values
11: Clear/Special/12: White	High Middle Low

S: Fuser Setting HQ

Under the following conditions, set the print speed.

Printing using Special Color Only

High Quality is applied in DFE Setting

4

Setting Item	Values
15: Clear/Special/16: White/17: Metallic/18: Option	High Middle Low

1232: Fusing Temperature

BW/FC/FCS

Under the following conditions, adjust heat roller temperature, temperature correction, initial sheet interval.

B & W/Full Color/Full Color with Special

High Quality is not applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Heat Roller Temp	200	100	1	Degree C
02: Corcct Temp: Initial Feed/03: Corcct Temp: Pre-Feed	30	0		
04: Initial Print Interval: Low/05: Initial Print Interval	3			None

FCS

Under the following conditions, adjust heat roller temperature, temperature correction, and initial sheet interval.

Full Color Printing including Special

High Quality is applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
06: Heat Roller Temp: Clear/Special/07: Heat Roller Temp: White/08: Heat Roller Temp: Metallic/09: Heat Roller Temp: Option	200	100	1	Degree C
10: Corct Temp: Init Fd: Clear/Special/11: Corct Temp: Init Fd: White/12: Correct Temp: Initial Feed: Option/13: Correct Temp: Initial Feed: Option/14: Corct Temp: Pre-Fd: Clear/Special/15: Corct Temp: Pre-Fd: White/16: Correct Temp: Pre-Feed: Metallic/17: Correct Temp: Pre-Feed: Option	30	0		
18: Init Sht Intvl: Low: Clear/Special/19: Init Sht Intvl: Low: White/20: Initial Sheet Interval: Low: Metallic/21: Initial Sheet Interval: Low: Option/22: Init Sht Intvl: Clear/Special/23: Init Sht Intvl: White/24: Initial Sheet Interval: Metallic/25: Initial Sheet Interval: Option	3			None

S

Under the following conditions, adjust heat roller temperature, temperature correction, and initial sheet interval.

Printing using Special Color Only

High Quality is applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
26: Heat Roller Temp: Clear/Special/27: Heat Roller Temp: White/28: Heat Roller Temp: Metallic/29: Heat Roller Temp: Option	200	100	1	Degree C
30: Corct Temp: Init Fd: Clear/Special/31: Corct Temp: Init Fd: White/32: Correct Temp: Initial Feed: Metallic/33: Correct Temp: Initial Feed: Option/34: Corct Temp: Pre-Fd: Clear/Special/35: Corct Temp: Pre-Fd: White/36: Correct Temp: Pre-Feed: Metallic/37: Correct Temp: Pre-Feed: Option	30	0		
38: Init Sht Intvl: Low: Clear/Special/39: Init Sht Intvl: Low: White/40: Initial Sheet Interval: Low: Metallic/41: Initial Sheet Interval: Low: Option/42: Init Sht Intvl: Clear/Special/43: Init Sht Intvl: White/44: Initial Sheet Interval: Metallic/45: Initial Sheet Interval: Option	3			None

BW/FC/FCS: Fuser Setting HQ

Under the following conditions, adjust heat roller temperature, temperature correction, initial sheet interval.

B & W/Full Color/Full Color including Special

High Quality is not applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
46: Heat Roller Temp	200	100	1	Degree C
47: Corct Temp: Initial Feed/48: Corct Temp: Pre-Feed	30	0		
49: Initial Sheet Interval: Low/50: Initial Sheet Interval	3			None

FCS: Fuser Setting HQ

Under the following conditions, adjust heat roller temperature, temperature correction, and initial sheet interval.

Full Color Printing including Special

High Quality is applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
51: Heat Roller Temp: Clear/Special/52: Heat Roller Temp: White/53: Heat Roller Temp: Metallic/54: Heat Roller Temp: Option	200	100	1	Degree C
55: Corct Temp: Init Fd: Clear/Special/56: Corct Temp: Init Fd: White/57: Correct Temp: Initial Feed: Metallic/58: Correct Temp: Initial Feed: Option/59: Corct Temp: Pre-Fd: Clear/Special/60: Corct Temp: Pre-Fd: White/65: Initial Sheet Interval: Low: Metallic/66: Initial Sheet Interval: Low: Option	30	0		
61: Correct Temp: Pre-Feed: Metallic/62: Correct Temp: Pre-Feed: Option/63: Init Sht Intvl: Low: Clear/Special/64: Init Sht Intvl: Low: White/67: Init Sht Intvl: Clear/Special/68: Init Sht Intvl: White/69: Initial Sheet Interval: Metallic/70: Initial Sheet Interval: Option	3			None

S: Fuser Setting HQ

Under the following conditions, adjust heat roller temperature, temperature correction, and initial sheet interval.

Printing using Special Color Only

High Quality is applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
71: Heat Roller Temp: Clear/Special/72: Heat Roller Temp: White/73: Heat Roller Temp: Metallic/74: Heat Roller Temp: Option	200	100	1	Degree C
75: Corct Temp: Init Fd: Clear/Special/76: Corct Temp: Init Fd: White/77: Correct Temp: Initial Feed: Metallic/78: Correct Temp: Initial Feed: Option/79: Corct Temp: Pre-Fd: Clear/Special/80: Corct Temp: Pre-Fd: White/81: Correct Temp: Pre-Feed: Metallic/82: Correct Temp: Pre-Feed: Option	30	0		
83: Init Sht Intvl: Low: Clear/Special/84: Init Sht Intvl: Low: White/85: Initial Sheet Interval: Low: Metallic/86: Initial Sheet Interval: Low: Option/87: Init Sht Intvl: Clear/Special/88: Init Sht Intvl: White/89: Initial Sheet Interval: Metallic/90: Initial Sheet Interval: Option	3			None

1233: Fusing Pressure Temperature

BW/FC/FCS

Under the following conditions, adjust pressure roller temperature.

Black & White Printing /Full Color Printing/Full Color Printing including Special

High Quality is not applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Pressure Roller Temp: BW/FC/FCS	200	50	1	Degree C

FCS/S

Under the following conditions, adjust pressure roller temperature.

Full Color Printing including Special Color

High Quality is applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
02: Press Rlr Temp: Clear/Special/03: Press Rlr Temp: White04: Heat Roller Temp: Metallic/05: Heat Roller Temp: Option	200	50	1	Degree C

Pressure Roller Heater

Turns on the pressure heater inside the fusing unit while printing. You can enable it on some types of media including clear film and label paper. (It is not available for plain paper, coated paper, and other standard paper.)

Turning on the heater may improve the toner fixation.

Setting Item	Values
06: Setting	Off On

1234: Print Mode When Switching Paper Type

Adjust the time to wait before switching paper in a mixed-paper job. Specifying [Productivity Priority] improves productivity, but may degrade the fusing quality.

Setting Item	Values
01: Setting	Use Operator Adjustment Settings Fusing Priority Standard Productivity Priority

1235: Fusing Temperature Range

BW/FC/FCS

Under conditions below, set range of fusing start temperature.

B&W/FC/FC with S

HQ is not applied in DFE

The lager value becomes, the earlier print starts. However, fusing quality may become lower.

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Level: BW/FC/FCS	16	1	1	None

FCS

Under conditions below, set range of fusing start temperature.

FC with S

HQ is applied in DFE Setting

The lager value becomes, the earlier printing starts. However, fusing quality may become lower.

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
02: Level: Clear/Special/03: Level: White/04: Level: Metallic/05: Level: Option	16	1	1	None

S

Under conditions below, set range of fusing start temperature. Print using S

Only HQ is applied in DFE

The lager value becomes, the earlier print starts. However, fusing quality may become lower.

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
06: Level: Clear/Special/07: Level: White/08: Level: Metallic/09: Level: Option	16	1	1	None

BW/FC/FCS: Fuser Setting HQ

Under conditions below, set range of fusing start temperature.

B&W/FC/FC with S

HQ is not applied in DFE

The lager value becomes, the earlier print starts. However, fusing quality may become lower.

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
10: Level: BW/FC/FCS	16	1	1	None

FCS: Fuser Setting HQ

Under conditions below, set range of fusing start temperature.

FC with S HQ is applied in DFE Setting

The larger value becomes, the earlier printing starts. However, fusing quality may become lower.

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
11: Level: Clear/Special/12: Level: White/13: Level: Metallic/14: Level: Option	16	1	1	None

4

S: Fuser Setting HQ

Under conditions below, set range of fusing start temperature.

Print using S Only

HQ is applied in DFE

The larger value becomes, the earlier print starts. However, fusing quality may become lower.

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
15: Level: Clear/Special/16: Level: White/17: Level: Metallic/18: Level: Option	16	1	1	None

1236: Fusing Pressure Roller Cooling

BW/FC/FCS

Under the following conditions, set the cooling fan level of pressure roller.

Black & White/Full Color/Full Color including Special Color

High Quality is not applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Fan Level: BW/FC/FCS	6	0	1	None

FCS/S

Under the following conditions, set the cooling fan level of pressure roller.

Full Color Printing including Special Color

High Quality is applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
02: Fan Level: Clear/Special/03: Fan Level: White/04: Fan Level: Metallic/05: Fan Level: Option	6	0	1	None

4

1237: Print Speed (Sheet Interval Adj)

BW/FC/FCS

Under the following conditions, adjust the print speed by widening sheet interval.

Black & White/Full Color/Full Color including Special

High Quality is not applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: BW/FC/FCS	100	1	1	%

FCS

Under the following conditions, adjust the print speed by widening sheet interval.

Full Color Printing including Special Color

High Quality is applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
02: Clear/Special/03: White/04: Metallic/05: Option	100	1	1	%

1238: Fusing Cleaning

BW/FC/FCS

Under the following conditions, adjust the frequency of the pressure roller cleaning.

Black & White/Full Color/Full Color including Special

High Quality is not applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Values
01: Cleaning Interval: BW/FC/FCS	Normal Frequently More Frequently Most Frequently

4

FCS/S

Under the following conditions, adjust the frequency of the pressure roller cleaning.

Full Color Printing including Special Color

High Quality is applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Values
02: Cleaning Interval: Clear/Special/03: Cleaning Interval: White/04: Cleaning Interval: Metallic/05: Cleaning Interval: Option	Normal Frequently More Frequently Most Frequently

1239: Margin

BW/FC/FCS/S

Under the following conditions, adjust margin (mask width) of leading/trailing edge of image.

High Quality is not applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Leading Edge/02: Trailing Edge	10	0	0.1	mm

FCS

Under the following conditions, adjust margin (mask width) of leading/trailing edge of image.

Full Color including Special

High Quality is applied in DFE Setting

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
03: Leading Edge: Clear/Special/04: Leading Edge: White/07: Trailing Edge: Clear/Special/08: Trailing Edge: White/09: Trailing Edge: Metallic/10: Trailing Edge: Option	10	0	0.1	mm

4

1240: Fusing Nip Width: Paper Type

Setting Item	Values
01: Type	Other than Envelope Envelope

1241: Fusing Nip Width Adjustment

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Other than Envelope	4	1	1	None
02: Envelope	20,000	0		µm

1242: Initial Fusing Temperature for Envelope

Before the envelope is printed, stabilize the nip width to reduce the wrinkles of the paper. It may take 3 minutes.

Setting Item	Values
01: Setting	Off On

1243: Fusing Belt Smoothing

Interval

Adjust the interval to execute the auto smoothing fusing belt. Select a higher frequency for greater smoothness, this may reduce the life of the smoothing roller.

Setting Item	Values
01: For Uneven Gloss (Short Time)/02: For Belt Scratches	Off (Do not Execute) Normal Frequently More Frequently Most Frequently

1244 Fusing Pressure Roller On Before Fusing

Turn on or off pressurization when the feed speed of the fusing belt is adjusted before paper is fed.

Setting Item	Values
01: Pressure	Off On

1245: Gloss Control

Specify whether to adjust glossiness.

Setting Item	Values
01: Setting	Off On

Specify the degree of glossiness when specifying [On] in [Gloss Control].

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
02: Gloss Level	3	-1	1	None

BW/FC/FCS

Specify the temperature compensation to apply on the standard temperature for BW/FC/FCS.

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
03: Correct Temperature	50	-50	1	°C

4

FCS/S

Specify the temperature compensation to apply on the standard temperature in FCS/S.

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
04: Correct Temperature	50	-50	1	°C

13: Machine: Paper Feed/Output

1301: 2-Tray LCIT: Paper Feed Mode

Adjust the fan operation if double feed or nonfeed occurs in Wide Large Capacity Tray.

Setting Item	Values
01: Paper Feed Mode:Fan Level	Prevent Double Feed (Weakest Blow) Prevent Double Feed (Weaker Blow) Standard (Default) Prevent Non Feed (Stronger Blow) Prevent Non Feed (Strongest Blow)

4

1302: 2-Tray LCIT: Fan/Shutter

Updraft Fan Level

Under conditions below, adjust vacuum fan operation in Wide Large Capacity Tray. Increase the air volume with [+], and decrease it with [-]. [S: - 150/L: 150.1 mm -] [s: - 148/m: 148.1 - 487.7/l: 487.8 - 700/xl: 700.1 mm -]

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Size: Across: S/Feed: s/02: Size: Across: S/Feed: m/03: Size: Across: S/Feed: l/04: Size: Across: L/Feed: s/05: Size: Across: L/Feed: m/06: Size: Across: L/Feed: l/ 07: Size: Across: L/Feed: xl	100	0	10	%

Blower Fan Level

Under the following conditions, adjust the blower fan operation in Wide Large Capacity Tray. Increase the air volume with [+], and decrease it with [-]. [S: - 150/L: 150.1 mm -] [s: - 148/m: 148.1 - 487.7/l: 487.8 - 700/xl: 700.1 mm -]

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
08: Size: Across: S/Feed: s/09: Size: Across: S/Feed: m/10: Size: Across: S/Feed: l/11: Size: Across: L/Feed: s/12: Size: Across: L/Feed: m/13: Size: Across: L/Feed: l/14: Size: Across: L/Feed: xl	100	0	10	%

Side Fan Level

Under the following conditions, adjust the side fan operation in Wide Large Capacity Tray. Increase the air volume with [+], and decrease it with [-]. [S: - 150/L: 150.1 mm -] [s: - 148/m: 148.1 - 487.7/l: 487.8 - 700/xl: 700.1 mm -]

4

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
15: Size: Across: S/Feed: s/16: Size: Across: S/Feed: m/17: Size: Across: S/Feed: l/18: Size: Across: L/Feed: s/19: Size: Across: L/Feed: m/20: Size: Across: L/Feed: l/21: Size: Across: L/Feed: xl	100	0	10	%

Vacuum Fan Level

Under the following conditions, adjust the vacuum fan operation in Wide Large Capacity Tray. Increase the air volume with [+], and decrease it with [-]. [S: - 150/L: 150.1 mm -] [s: - 148/m: 148.1 - 487.7/l: 487.8 - 700/xl: 700.1 mm -]

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
22: Size: Across: S/Feed: s/23: Size: Across: S/Feed: m/24: Size: Across: S/Feed: l/25: Size: Across: L/Feed: s/26: Size: Across: L/Feed: m/27: Size: Across: L/Feed: l/28: Size: Across: L/Feed: xl	100	0	10	%

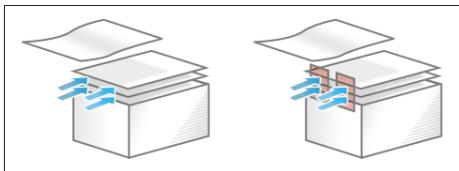
Return Fan Level

Under the following conditions, adjust the return fan operation in Wide Large Capacity Tray. Increase the air volume with [+], and decrease it with [-]. [S: - 150/L: 150.1 mm -] [s: - 148/m: 148.1 - 487.7/l: 487.8 - 700/xl: 700.1 mm -]

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
29: Size: Across: S/Feed: s/30: Size: Across: S/Feed: m/31: Size: Across: S/Feed: l/32: Size: Across: L/Feed: s/33: Size: Across: L/Feed: m/34: Size: Across: L/Feed: l/35: Size: Across: L/Feed: xl	100	0	10	%

Updraft Fan Shutter

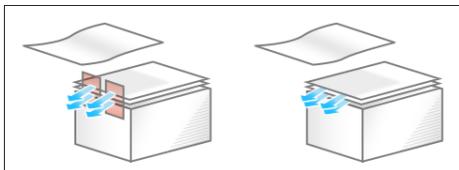
Turn on or off the updraft fan shutter in Wide Large Capacity Tray. If [On] is set, the shutter operates according to the paper fed timing. [Off] enables constant operation of the fan.



Setting Item	Values
36: Setting	Off On

Return Fan Shutter

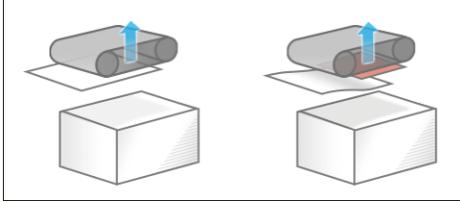
Turn on or off the return fan shutter in Wide Large Capacity Tray. If [On] is set, the fan operates according to the paper fed timing. [Off] disables the fan operation.



Setting Item	Values
37: Setting	Off On

Vacuum Fan Shutter

Turn on or off the vacuum fan shutter in Wide Large Capacity Tray. If [On] is set, the fan operates according to the paper fed timing. [Off] enables constant operation of the fan.



4

Setting Item	Values
38: Setting	Off On

1303: 2-Tray LCIT: Other Settings

Adjust feed timing by setting wait time of blowing to float paper in Wide Large Capacity Tray.

* If double feed occurs at the start of the job, set a longer time for waiting.

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Paper Floating Wait Time	5	3	0.1	second

Extend Fan Operating Time

Set to [On (Improve Separation)] for paper that is likely to double feed or not feed. Setting a longer fan operating time improves separation. However, the paper feed interval is longer, which may lower productivity.

Setting Item	Values
02: Setting	Off On (Improve Separation)

Prevent Initial Nonfeed

Set to [On] for paper that is likely to not feed immediately after printing starts, but which is not improved by setting [Prevent Non Feed] in [Paper Feed Mode: Fan Level]. Elevating the bottom plate of the tray immediately after printing starts helps to prevent non-feeding.

Setting Item	Values
03: Setting	Off On

Tray Elevation Assist

Set the timing at which tray elevation assist starts.

Setting Item	Values
04: Assist Mode	Off Assist On When Remaining Paper Low Always Assist On

4

Specify the thickness of paper (measured value) when you specify [Always Assist On] or [Assist On When Remaining Paper Low] in [Assist Mode].

An initial value is specified by default when you are not entering the value that you measured on paper in [Paper Thickness]. Do not change the default value in the case.

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
05: Paper Thickness	2,000	20	10	µm

Specify the ascending speed of the tray when you specify [Always Assist On] or [Assist On When Remaining Paper Low] in [Assist Mode].

Setting Item	Values
06: Speed	Slowest Slower Standard Faster Fastest

1312: Main/Bypass

Set the operation of the paper feed roller of Main Tray and Bypass Tray. If [On] is set, contact time of the roller is extended according to the paper type and paper weight.

Setting Item	Values
01: Setting	Off On

1321: Correct Paper Curl

Select the mode and amount of curl correction for output paper.

Setting Item	Values
01: Correction Mode	Off Π Curl Correction Level: Small Π Curl Correction Level: Medium Π Curl Correction Level: Large U Curl Correction Level: Small U Curl Correction Level: Medium U Curl Correction Level: Large

4

[Π Curl Correction Level: Large] or [U Curl Correction Level: Large]

[Π Curl Correction Level: Large] or [U Curl Correction Level: Large]

Speed Adjustment

Adjust the decurler speed according to the selected correction mode in Correct Paper Curl.

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
02: Decurler: Correction Off/03: Decurler: Correction Weak/04: Decurler: Correction Strong	7.5	-1	0.5	%

1331: Jam Detection

JAM047/080/097/098/099

Turn on/off detect function for the following jam.

JAM047 (paper scan error)/JAM080 (gap: feed)/JAM097 (skew)/JAM098 (gap: across)/JAM099 (double feed)

Correction for image position gap with across and skew are also turned on/off.

Setting Item	Values
01: Detect JAM080/02: Detect/Control JAM047/097/098/03: Detect JAM099	Off On

JAM097/098 Detect Threshold

Set the threshold value which determines whether a jam has occurred for JAM097 (skew) and JAM098 (image position gap with across feed).

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
04: JAM097	10	0	0.1	mm
05: JAM098	7.5	1.6		

Paper Edge Detection

Set the illumination level of the image sensor for Image Position Feedback Correction: Gap with Across Feed and Skew Correction.

↓ Note

- If JAM047 or JAM097 or JAM098 occurs, increase the value by one step.

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
06: Setting	5	1	1	None

Registration Gate Home Position

Adjust optimum value to increase the accuracy of Skew Correction depending on paper weight. If the image is highly skewed, adjust the value to [+] direction for thin paper, [-] direction for thick paper.

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
07: Setting	8	-8	1	None

1341: Motor Speed

Speed Adjustment

Adjust the speed of each motor.

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Transfer Timing Roller/02: Paper Transfer Belt	3	-3	0.01	%
03: Transfer-Fusing Transfer Belt/07: Cooling Roller After Fusing/08: Detection Roller/09: Paper Output Roller	5	-5	0.1	
10: Switchback: Entrance Roller/11: Switchback: Exit Roller	3	-3		
04: Fusing Belt: Paper Length: Less than 487.8 mm/05: Fusing Belt: Paper Length: 487.8 - 700.0 mm/06: Fusing Belt: Paper Length: More than 700.0 mm	10	-10		
12: Written Image	0.4	-0.4	0.01	
13: Photoconductor Unit: Drum/14: Intermediate Transfer Belt	1	-1		

1351: Interposer

Set the fan operation for Interposer.

Fan Setting

When it is [On], air is blown to the edge of sheets to separate them in close contact.

Setting Item	Values
01: Setting	Off On

Fan Level

Setting Item	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
02: Setting	100	10	10	%

1361: Finisher: Output

Shift Tray Jogger

Specify the behavior of the output jogger on the finisher shift tray. Specify [On] to activate the jogger to align the output paper in the vertical direction.

Setting Item	Values
01: Other Than Folded Paper/02: Z-fold Paper/03: Half Fold Paper/04: Letter Fold Paper	Off On

5. Adjustment Settings for Operators

How to Use the "Operator Adjust." Screen

This section explains how to operate the "Operator Adjust." screen.



MOEBPM7217

1. Searches for a setting item to be adjusted.

2. Close the hierarchy (🔍)

Press this to hide the adjustment items that are displayed in hierarchy layers, and display the root groups of the adjustment items.

3. [Output to File]

Press this to save the setting values of the item you adjusted to a file in the CSV format.

4. [Adjustment Print]

Navigates to the adjustment print screen. On the screen, you can check the changes made to the setting, and other information.

5. Setting Screen

Specify or modify the adjustment item.

6. Displays the list of groups

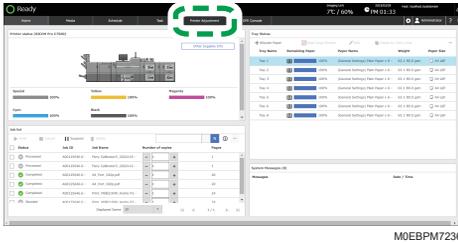
Select the group to display the adjustment setting that belongs to the group, and select the adjustment setting to display its current setting. When you select the adjustment setting whose value can be specified or modified, the setting screen appears to the right.

📌 Note

- All items in Operator Adjust. appear regardless of which of the machine's optional components are installed. If you change the settings of options that are not installed, the changes will have no effect.

Configuration Procedure of Operator Adjust.

1. Press the [Printer Adjustment] hub.



2. Specify a group and item to adjust, and specify the setting.

The procedure varies depending on the adjustment item. For details, see page 198 "Features of the Displayed Items for Operator Adjust."

3. Press [OK].

Features of the Displayed Items for Operator Adjust.

The following operations are available for each adjustment item:

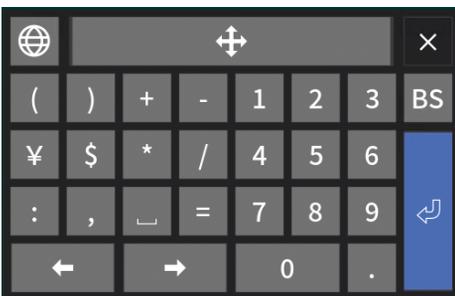
- Value setting
- Item setting
- Executing
- Display only

Value setting

Press [+], or [-], or move the slider left or right to decrease or increase the value.



A numeric keypad appears when you select an input box. Press the keypad to enter a value.



- [BS]: Erases the entered value one character at a time.
- : Press this to fix the entered value.

Item setting

Select the item you require.

Off

On *

Executing

Press [Execute] to perform a selected function.

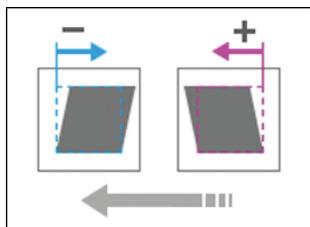
Display only

You can check the setting of the selected item.

01: Machine: Image Position

0101: Perpendicularity Adjustment

Correct the perpendicularity of image.



5

Setting Item	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: [Correction Value]	0	20	-20	1	pulse

02: Machine: Image Quality

0201: Execute Image Quality Adjustment

The adjustments take the following amount of time according to its type:

- Adjust Image Density: Approximately 1.5 minutes
- Density Difference: With Feed: Approximately 5 minutes
- Color Registration: Approximately 30 seconds
- Adjust Image Density (Including special color): Approximately 3 minutes
- Density Difference:With Feed (Include special color): Approximately 5 minutes

Execute the following adjustment manually: image density /reduce density diff. in across direction / reduce density diff. in feeding direction / reduce color dispersion.

Setting Items	Remarks
01: Adjust Image Density	Press [Execute] to execute the function.
02: Density Difference: With Feed	
03: Color Registration	
04: Adjust Image Density (Including special color)	
05: Density Difference:With Feed (Include special color)	

0202: Maximum Image Density

Adjust max. image density for each color. Use [+] or [-] to increase or decrease adhesion amount. After the setting change, the image density is adjusted automatically before print start.

Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Black	0	5	-5	1	None
02: Cyan					
03: Magenta					
04: Yellow					
05: Special*1					

* 1 5th station upgrade kit is required.

Note

- Toner fixation deteriorates when you increase the toner adhesion amount, and splashing or smearing of characters and hairlines may occur.

0203: Line Width

Adjust laser beam for image data writing. Halftone dot and fine line becomes thicker when laser beam increases. After setting change, image density is adjusted automatically before print start.

Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Black	0	5	-5	1	None
02: Cyan					
03: Magenta					
04: Yellow					
05: Special* ¹					

*¹ 5th station upgrade kit is required.

Note

- Screen dots and hairline width become thicker when you increase the intensity.

0204: Density Difference: Across Feed

Adjust the image density difference in the vertical direction. Use [+] or [-] to increase or decrease the density of lower part of image.

Note

- Depending on the machine's other settings, this setting may have no effect.

Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: 1st Station	0	10	-10	1	None
02: 2nd Station					
03: 3rd Station					
04: 4th Station					
05: 5th Station* ¹					

* 1 5th station upgrade kit is required.

0205: Density Difference Printing: Setting

The sensitivity is updated when you execute [Density Difference Printing: Across Feed] after specifying "0" in this setting.

When you perform an adjustment print, 50 sheets are output.

Setting Item	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Update Sensitivity * 1	0	6	0	0.01	mg/ cm ² / kV

* 1 The value varies depending on the machine model. Also, the value changes when [Density Difference Printing: Across Feed] is executed.

03: Machine: Paper Feed/ Output

0301: Detect JAM048

Set On/Off for JAM048 (detect paper jam by detection error of image position correction mark).

Setting Item	Values	Default Value
01: Setting	Off On	On

0303: Buffer Pass Unit Fan Activation Setting

Select the fan condition for the Cool Feeding Unit. If the fan is stopped, the mechanical noise would be lower, but there would be a risk of blocking.

Setting Item	Values	Default Value
01: Setting	All Paper/Ream Weights Paper/Ream Weight 3 or Heavier Paper/Ream Weight 4 or Heavier Paper/Ream Weight 5 or Heavier Paper/Ream Weight 6 or Heavier Off	Paper/Ream Weight 3 or Heavier

↓ Note

- The effectiveness of the cooling function degrades upon the fan stopping. It may cause the printed sheets not to get dry, and stick together forming a bundle.

0305: Remaining Paper Output Tray When Misfeed Occurs

When a paper jam occurs, the paper remaining inside the machine is ejected to the specified tray.

Note that when there is paper that is ejected normally on the tray, the remaining paper is stacked over the existing paper on the tray.

Setting Item	Setting Value	Default
01: Finisher Shift Tray 1	Off	Off
02: Stacker Upper Tray	On	
03: Second Stacker Upper Tray		

0307: Auto Continue Paper Feeding

Specify whether to resume feeding paper automatically when a feeding problem occurs on a specific tray.

Setting Item	Setting Value	Default
01: Tray 1	Off	Off
02: Tray 2	On	
03: 2-Tray LCIT: Bypass Tray		
04: 2-Tray LCIT: Tray 3		
05: 2-Tray LCIT: Tray 4		
06: 2-Tray LCIT: Tray 5		
07: 2-Tray LCIT: Tray 6		
08: 2-Tray LCIT: Tray 7		
09: 2-Tray LCIT: Tray 8		

05: Machine: Maintenance

0501: Execute Process Adjustment

Execute following multiple adjustments for printing at once: image density /color deviation / charge roller cleaning.

Setting Item	Remarks
01: Execute	Press [Execute] to execute the function.

0502: Screw-on Cap to Replace

The Toner Bottle Cap closes. The Toner Bottle in use can be pulled out when the Cap is closed. Use it when you want to replace the Toner Bottle.

Setting Items	Remarks
01: Black 02: Cyan 03: Magenta 04: Yellow	Press [Execute] to execute the function.

0503: Execute Charger Unit Cleaning

It is used to clean the Charge Roller.

Setting Item	Remarks
01: Execute	Press [Execute] to execute the function.

0506: Execute Developer Refreshing

Replace some part of developer inside the Development Unit.

Refresh the toner for print jobs if:

- Background is dirty
- White spots appear

- Density is uneven
- Black parts are faded

Setting Items	Remarks
01: KCMY 02: Black 03: Special* ¹	Press [Execute] to execute the function.

*¹ 5th station upgrade kit is required.

0508: Manually Smooth Fusing Belt

Smooth the Fusing Belt manually.

Setting Items	Remarks
01: Belt Scratches 02: Uneven Gloss (Short Time)	Press [Execute] to execute the function.

5

0509: Fusing Belt Manual Smoothing Adjustment

Set the conditions for manual Fusing Belt smoothing.

Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Smoothing Time (Belt Scratches)	120	60,000	0	1	sec
02: Smoothing Time (Uneven Gloss)	10				

0510: Fusing Belt Auto Smoothing Setting

Set the conditions for automatic Fusing Belt smoothing.

Setting Items	Values	Default Value
01: Auto Execute Belt Smoothing: For Belt Scratches	Normal Frequently (With Density Adjustment) More Frequently Most Frequently	Normal
02: Auto Execute Belt Smoothing: For Uneven Gloss	Off On	On

0511: Fusing Belt Smoothing Adjustment

5

Set the conditions for Fusing Belt smoothing.

Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Roller Speed (Uneven Gloss)	100	100	50	1	%
02: Roller Speed (Belt Scratches: Short Time)					
03: Roller Speed (Belt Scratches: Long Time)					

0512: Fuser Unit Speed Adjustment

Performs adjustment to compensate for the deviation in the rotation speed of the fusing unit. The machine adjusts the rotation speed of the fusing unit to an appropriate value.

This adjustment takes approximately three minutes. During adjustment, the machine displays a message on the control panel. Do not open the front cover of the machine while the machine is adjusting the rotation speed.

Setting Item	Remarks
01: Execute	Press [Execute] to execute the function.

Specify the nip to optimize the line speed of the fusing unit.

Setting Item	Setting Value	Default
02: Nip Setting	Nip 1 Nip 2 Nip 3 Nip 4	Nip 4

0513: Wind Fuser Cleaning Unit at Replacement

Execute this when replacing the Fuser Cleaning Unit.

Setting Item	Description
01: Execute	Press [Execute] to execute the function.

5

0514: Temperature/Humidity Inside

Display temperature and humidity.

Setting Items	Remarks
01: PCU Temperature 02: PCU Humidity 03: Machine Temperature 04: Temperature 05: Humidity	Displays the corresponding value.

0515: Display System Message for When Outside Optimal Range

Specify whether to display a warning message notifying that the ambient temperature or humidity is outside the optimal range when the machine is used under an extremely hot and humid, or cold and dry environment.

Setting Item	Setting Value	Default Value
01: High Temperature/Humidity	Off	Off
02: Low Temperature/Humidity	On	

0518: Counter Setting for Operating Multiple Fuser Units

Specify the behavior of the counters on the cleaning unit and fusing belt smoothing roller when exchanging one fusing unit for another

When [Coordinate (Switch Counter Value)] is selected, the counters on the cleaning unit and fusing belt smoothing roller change after replacing the fusing unit.

When [Not Coordinate (Carry-Over Counter Value)] is selected, the counter values of the cleaning unit and fusing belt smoothing roller are carried over after replacing the fusing unit.

Setting Item	Setting Value	Default
01: Cleaning Unit	Coordinate (Switch Counter Value)	Not Coordinate (Carry-Over Counter Value)
02: Fusing Belt Smoothing Roller	Not Coordinate (Carry-Over Counter Value)	

5

0594: ITB: Reset Belt Position at Replacement

Resets the operating conditions of the Intermediate Transfer Belt according to the belt position.

Execute this after you replace the Intermediate Transfer Belt.

Setting Item	Description
01: Execute	Press [Execute] to execute the function.

0595: ITB: Feedback Sensor Light Intensity Adjustment

Resets the operating conditions of the Intermediate Transfer Belt according to the light intensity.

Execute this after you clean the feedback sensor or replace the Intermediate Transfer Belt.

Setting Item	Description
01: Execute	Press [Execute] to execute the function.

0596: ITB: Feedback Sensor Initial Phase Acquisition

Resets the operating conditions of the Intermediate Transfer Belt according to the phase.

Execute this after you replace the Intermediate Transfer Belt and execute [ITB: Feedback Sensor Light Intensity Adjustment].

Setting Item	Description
01: Execute	Press [Execute] to execute the function.

0597: ITB: Feedback Control Status

Shows the control status of the Intermediate Transfer Belt.

Check that this item displays "1" after you execute [ITB: Feedback Sensor Light Intensity Adjustment].

Setting Item	Description
01: Status	Displays a value depending on the status. "1" indicates normal status, and "0" indicates abnormal status.

5

0598: ITB: Speed Adjustment During Encoder Control

Resets the operating conditions of the Intermediate Transfer Belt according to its speed.

Execute this after you replace the Intermediate Transfer Belt and execute [ITB: Feedback Sensor Initial Phase Acquisition] or [ITB: Feedback Sensor Light Intensity Adjustment].

Setting Item	Description
01: Execute	Press [Execute] to execute the function.

0599: Reset Parts Counter

Resets the counter value of the replacement part.

Setting Item	Description
003: Development Unit (Black): Vent Filter 004: PCU Cleaning Unit (Black) 005: PCU Cleaning Unit (Black): Cleaning Blade 007: PCU Cleaning Unit (Black): Lubricant/ Lubrication Roller 008: PCU Cleaning Unit (Black): Lubrication Blade 009: PCU Cleaning Unit (Black): Joint 010: PCU Cleaning Unit (Black): Gears 011: PCU Cleaning Unit (Black): Cleaning Blade Side Seal 012: PCU Cleaning Unit (Black): Lubrication Blade Side Seal 013: Charger Unit (Black)	Press [Execute] to execute the function.
014: Photoconductor Unit (Black) 017: Development Unit (Cyan): Vent Filter 018: PCU Cleaning Unit (Cyan) 019: PCU Cleaning Unit (Cyan): Cleaning Blade 021: PCU Cleaning Unit (Cyan): Lubricant/ Lubrication Roller 022: PCU Cleaning Unit (Cyan): Lubrication Blade 023: PCU Cleaning Unit (Cyan): Joint 024: PCU Cleaning Unit (Cyan): Gears 025: PCU Cleaning Unit (Cyan): Cleaning Blade Side Seal 026: PCU Cleaning Unit (Cyan): Lubrication Blade Side Seal	Press [Execute] to execute the function.

Setting Item	Description
027: Charger Unit (Cyan) 028: Photoconductor Unit (Cyan) 031: Development Unit (Magenta): Vent Filter 032: PCU Cleaning Unit (Magenta) 033: PCU Cleaning Unit (Magenta): Cleaning Blade 035: PCU Cleaning Unit (Magenta): Lubricant/Roller 036: PCU Cleaning Unit (Magenta): Lubrication Blade 037: PCU Cleaning Unit (Magenta): Joint 038: PCU Cleaning Unit (Magenta): Gears 039: PCU Cleaning Unit (Magenta): Cleaning Blade Side Seal	Press [Execute] to execute the function.
040: PCU Cleaning Unit (Magenta): Lubrication Blade Side Seal 041: Charger Unit (Magenta) 042: Photoconductor Unit (Magenta) 045: Development Unit (Yellow): Vent Filter 046: PCU Cleaning Unit (Yellow) 047: PCU Cleaning Unit (Yellow): Cleaning Blade 049: PCU Cleaning Unit (Yellow): Lubricant/Lubrication Roller 050: PCU Cleaning Unit (Yellow): Lubrication Blade 051: PCU Cleaning Unit (Yellow): Joint 052: PCU Cleaning Unit (Yellow): Gears	Press [Execute] to execute the function.

Setting Item	Description
053: PCU Cleaning Unit (Yellow): Cleaning Blade Side Seal 054: PCU Cleaning Unit (Yellow): Lubrication Blade Side Seal 055: Charger Unit (Yellow) 056: Photoconductor Unit (Yellow) 059: Development Unit (Special): Vent Filter 060: PCU Cleaning Unit (Special) 061: PCU Cleaning Unit (Special): Cleaning Blade 063: PCU Cleaning Unit (Special): Lubricant/Roller 064: PCU Cleaning Unit (Special): Lubrication Blade 065: PCU Cleaning Unit (Special): Joint	Press [Execute] to execute the function.
066: PCU Cleaning Unit (Special): Gears 067: PCU Cleaning Unit (Special): Cleaning Blade Side Seal 068: PCU Cleaning Unit (Special): Lubrication Blade Side Seal 069: Charger Unit (Special) 070: Photoconductor Unit (Special) 071: Dust Shield Glass 072: Photoconductor Unit: Drum Shaft (Greasing) 073: Development Unit (Black): Case 074: Development Unit (Cyan, Magenta, Yellow): Case 075: Development Unit (Special): Case	Press [Execute] to execute the function.

Setting Item	Description
076: Development Unit (Black): Cooling Sheet 077: Development Unit (Cyan, Magenta, Yellow): Cooling Sheet 078: Development Unit (Special): Cooling Sheet 079: Around Photoconductor Drum (Black): Potential Sensor 080: Around Photoconductor Drum (C, M, Y): Potential Sensor 081: Around Photoconductor Drum (Special): Potential Sensor 082: Print Cartridge Port (Black) 083: Print Cartridge Port (Cyan, Magenta, Yellow) 084: Print Cartridge Port (Special) 085: Intermediate Transfer Belt	Press [Execute] to execute the function.
086: Image Transfer Roller (1st Station) 087: Image Transfer Roller (2nd Station) 088: Image Transfer Roller (3rd Station) 089: Image Transfer Roller (4th Station) 090: Image Transfer Roller (5th Station) 091: Paper Transfer Bias Roller 092: ITB Lubrication Unit 093: ITB Lubrication Unit: Lubrication Roller 094: ITB Lubrication Unit: Lubricant 095: Intermediate Transfer Belt: Feedback Sensor	Press [Execute] to execute the function.

Setting Item	Description
096: Intermediate Transfer Belt: Centering Sensor 097: ITB Unit: Rollers 098: ITB Cleaning Unit 099: ITB Cleaning Unit: 1st Cleaning Roller 100: ITB Cleaning Unit: 1st Cleaning Blade 101: ITB Cleaning Unit: 1st Collection Roller 102: ITB Cleaning Unit: 1st Slider 103: ITB Cleaning Unit: 2nd Cleaning Roller 104: ITB Cleaning Unit: 2nd Cleaning Blade 105: ITB Cleaning Unit: 2nd Collection Roller	Press [Execute] to execute the function.
106: ITB Cleaning Unit: 2nd Slider 107: ITB Cleaning Unit: 3rd Cleaning Roller 108: ITB Cleaning Unit: 3rd Cleaning Blade 109: ITB Cleaning Unit: 3rd Collection Roller 110: ITB Cleaning Unit: 3rd Slider 111: Paper Transfer Unit 112: Paper Transfer Unit: Paper Transfer Belt Unit 113: Paper Transfer Unit: Paper Transfer Belt 114: Paper Transfer Roller 115: Paper Transfer Unit: Cleaning Unit	Press [Execute] to execute the function.
116: Paper Transfer Unit: Cleaning Blade 117: Paper Transfer Unit: Lubricant 118: Paper Transfer Unit: Lubrication Roller 119: Paper Transfer Unit: 2nd Cleaning Blade 120: Paper Transfer Unit: Paper Path 121: Paper Transfer Unit/ID Sensor 122: Transfer-Fusing Transfer: Paper Sensor 123: Fuser Unit 124: Fuser Unit: Belt 125: Fuser Unit: Fusing Roller	Press [Execute] to execute the function.

Setting Item	Description
126: Fuser Unit: Fusing Roller Bearings 127: Fuser Unit: Pressure Roller 128: Fuser Unit: Pressure Roller Bearings 129: Fuser Unit: Fusing Roller: Core Bar Temperature Sensor 130: Fuser Unit: Paper Path 133: Fusing Belt Smoothing Roller 134: Fuser Cleaning Unit 135: Fuser Cleaning Unit: Web 136: Fuser Cleaning Unit: Roller 137: Fusing Thermopile	Press [Execute] to execute the function.
138: Waste Toner Bottle 139: Ozone Filter (Short Life) 141: Dust Filter (Short Life) 143: Tray 1 144: Tray 1: Pickup Roller 145: Tray 1: Feed Roller 146: Tray 1: Separate Roller 147: Tray 2 148: Tray 2: Pickup Roller 149: Tray 2: Feed Roller	Press [Execute] to execute the function.
150: Tray 2: Separate Roller 151: Tray 1: Paper Path 152: Tray 2: Paper Path 153: Tray 1, 2: Paper Path 154: Tray 1, 2: Paper Feed Sensor 155: Right Drawer: Paper Path 1 156: Right Drawer: Paper Path 2 157: Right Drawer: Rotary Gate Roller (Driven) 158: Right Drawer: Paper Dust Case 159: Left Drawer: Paper Path 1	Press [Execute] to execute the function.

Setting Item	Description
160: Right Drawer: CIS 162: Left Drawer: Cooling Belt 163: Left Drawer: Detection Unit CIS Sensing Surface 164: Left Drawer: Paper Path 2 167: Booklet Staple Unit: Cartridge (Front) 168: Booklet Staple Unit: Cartridge (Back) 169: Booklet Staple Unit 170: Corner Staple Unit: Cartridge 171: Corner Staple Unit 172: Punch Unit: Perforator	Press [Execute] to execute the function.
173: Finisher: Shift Tray Paper Path 1 174: Finisher: Shift Tray Paper Path 2 175: Finisher: Staple Paper Path 1 176: Finisher: Staple Paper Path 2 177: Finisher: Signature Paper Path 1 178: Finisher: Signature Paper Path 2 179: Finisher: Punch Unit 180: Finisher: Jogger Fence 181: Finisher: Shift Tray 1: Worm Gear 182: Finisher: Shift Tray 2: Worm Gear	Press [Execute] to execute the function.
228: Bypass Tray 229: Bypass Tray: Pickup Roller 230: Bypass Tray: Feed Roller 231: Bypass Tray: Separate Roller 232: 2-Tray LCT: Tray 3: Feed Belt 233: 2-Tray LCT: Tray 4: Feed Belt 234: 2-Tray LCT: Tray 5: Feed Belt 235: 2-Tray LCT: Tray 6: Feed Belt 236: 2-Tray LCT: Tray 7: Feed Belt 237: 2-Tray LCT: Tray 8: Feed Belt	Press [Execute] to execute the function.

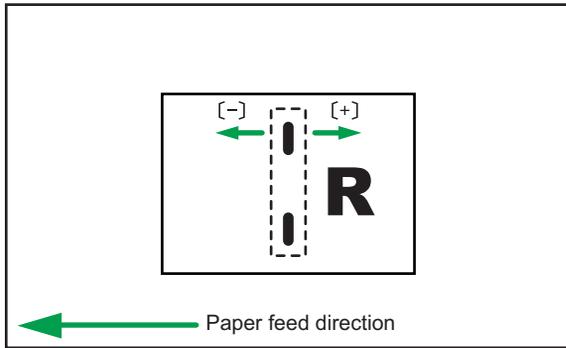
Setting Item	Description
238: 2-Tray LCT: Paper Path 1 239: 2-Tray LCT: Paper Path 2 241: 2-Tray LCT: Tray 3, 4: Feed Belt 242: 2-Tray LCT: Tray 5, 6: Feed Belt 243: 2-Tray LCT: Tray 7, 8: Feed Belt 244: 2-Tray LCT: Tray 3, 4: Side Fence Sliding Shaft 245: 2-Tray LCT: Tray 5, 6: Side Fence Sliding Shaft 246: 2-Tray LCT: Tray 7, 8: Side Fence Sliding Shaft 247: 2-Tray LCT: Dust Filter 249: First Stacker: Paper Path 1	Press [Execute] to execute the function.
250: First Stacker: Paper Path 2 251: First Stacker: Shift Tray Drive Unit 252: Second Stacker: Paper Path 1 253: Second Stacker: Paper Path 2 254: Second Stacker: Shift Tray Drive Unit 255: Detection Exit Roller (Driven)	Press [Execute] to execute the function.

06: Finishing: Finisher

0601: Staple Position for Booklet

Adjust the horizontal position of the booklet staples when using Booklet Finisher.

Press [+] to move the position right (across horizontally-spreading pages), or press [-] to move it left.



CVK010

Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: A3 SEF	0	1	-1	0.1	mm
02: B4 JIS SEF					
03: A4 SEF					
04: B5 JIS SEF					
05: SRA3 SEF					
06: SRA4 SEF					
07: 310 × 432 mm SEF					
08: 226 × 310 mm SEF					
09: 13 × 19 ¹ / ₅ SEF					
10: 13 × 19 SEF					
11: 13 × 18 SEF					
12: 12 ³ / ₅ × 19 ¹ / ₅ SEF					
13: 12 ³ / ₅ × 18 ¹ / ₂ SEF					
14: 12 × 18 SEF					
15: 11 × 17 SEF					
16: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14 SEF					
17: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 SEF					
18: 8K SEF					
19: 16K SEF					
20: Other Paper Sizes					
21: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ SEF					

0602: Folding Position for Booklet

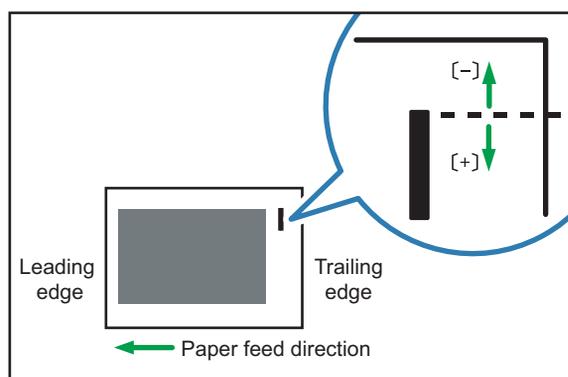
Adjust the horizontal position of the folding when using Booklet Finisher.

Press [+] to move the position right (across horizontally-spreading pages), or press [-] to move it left.

0603: Staple Position: Across Feed 1

Adjust the vertical position of the staple (applied at an edge) when using Finisher or Booklet Finisher.

Press [+] to move the stapling position away from the side edge of the sheet or [-] to move it toward the edge.



DFZ001

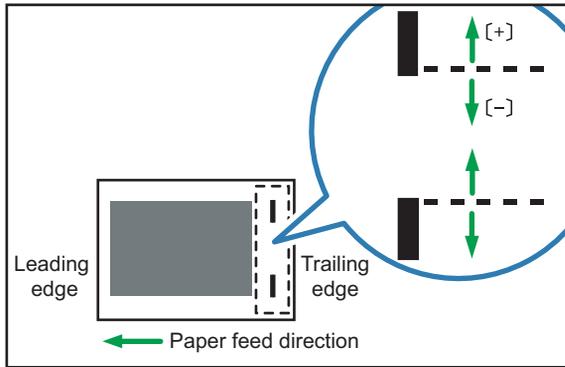
5

Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: A3 SEF	0	2	-2	0.1	mm
02: B4 JIS SEF					
03: A4 LEF					
04: A4 SEF					
05: B5 JIS LEF					
06: B5 JIS SEF					
07: 11 × 17 SEF					
08: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14 SEF					
09: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 LEF					
10: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 SEF					
11: 8K SEF					
12: 16K LEF					
13: 16K SEF					
14: Other Paper Sizes					
15: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ SEF					

0604: Staple Position: Across Feed 2

Adjust the vertical position of the staples (dual) when using Finisher or Booklet Finisher.

Press **[+]** to move the two stapling positions away from the center and each other or **[-]** to move them toward each other.



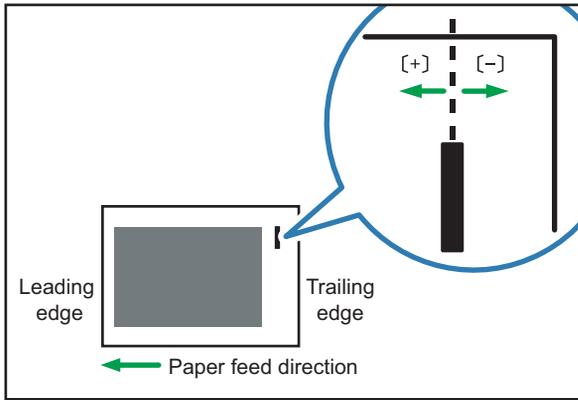
DFZ002

Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: A3 SEF	0	115	-14.5	0.5	mm
02: B4 JIS SEF		75			
03: A4 LEF		115			
04: A4 SEF		28			
05: B5 JIS LEF		75			
06: B5 JIS SEF		0			
07: 11 × 17 SEF		98			
08: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14 SEF		34			
09: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 LEF		98			
10: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 SEF		34			
11: 8K SEF		85			
12: 16K LEF					
13: 16K SEF		12			
14: Other Paper Sizes		115			
15: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ SEF		34			

0605: Staple Position: With Feed

Adjust the horizontal position of the staples when using Finisher or Booklet Finisher.

Press [+] to move the stapling position away from the trailing edge of the sheet or [-] to move it toward the edge.



DFZ003

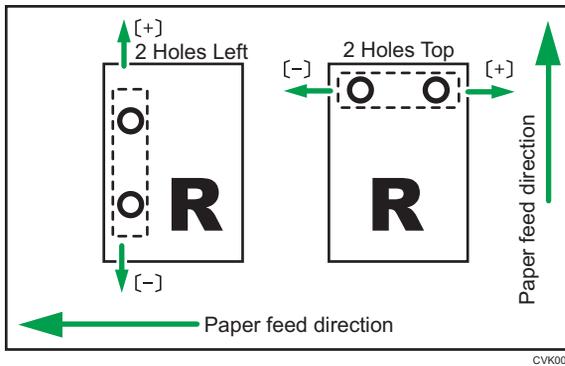
5

Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: A3 SEF	0	2	-2	0.1	mm
02: B4 JIS SEF					
03: A4 LEF					
04: A4 SEF					
05: B5 JIS LEF					
06: B5 JIS SEF					
07: 11 × 17 SEF					
08: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14 SEF					
09: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 LEF					
10: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 SEF					
11: 8K SEF					
12: 16K LEF					
13: 16K SEF					
14: Other Paper Sizes					
15: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ SEF					

0606: Punch Position: Across Feed

Adjust the vertical position of the punch holes when using Finisher or Booklet Finisher.

Press [+] to move the position forward (up), or [-] to move it backward (down).



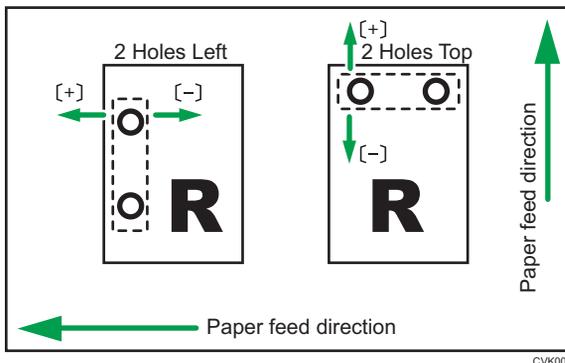
CVK007

Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: 2 Holes JP/EU	0	2	-2	0.5	mm
02: 3 Holes US					
03: 4 Holes EU					
04: 4 Holes NE					
05: 2 Holes US					

0607: Punch Position: With Feed

Adjust the horizontal position of the punch holes when using Finisher or Booklet Finisher.

Press **[+]** to move the position toward the top edge (left) relative to the paper feed direction, or **[-]** to move it toward the bottom edge (right).



CVK008

Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: 2 Holes JP/EU	0	4	-4	0.5	mm
02: 3 Holes US					
03: 4 Holes EU					
04: 4 Holes NE					
05: 2 Holes US					

0609: Set Number of Folds for Booklet

Specify the number of booklet folds to be performed when using Booklet Finisher.

You can adjust the paper folding strength by changing the number of folds per the booklet.

When you select "0", the default value, the finisher folds the booklet according to the number of sheets in the booklet, as shown below.

- 1–6 sheets: 1 time
- 7–10 sheets: 2 times
- 11–30 sheets: 6 times

The value set here is added to the default values. Set a negative value to reduce the number of times the finisher folds booklets.

Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Number of Folds for Booklet	0	6	-6	1	None

0637: Staple Tray: Rib Installed Mode to Strengthen Paper

Set the operation when the Paper Strengthening Rib is installed to Staple Tray.

This function can be used with Finisher or Booklet Finisher.

Before you set "Setting" to [On], attach the paper strengthening ribs.

Setting Item	Values	Default Value
01: Setting	Off On	Off

0638: Accuracy Priority for Stapling

Set the accuracy priority for stapling.

This function can be used with Finisher or Booklet Finisher.

Setting Item	Values	Default Value
01: Setting	Speed Priority Accuracy Priority	Speed Priority

0639: Accuracy Priority for Booklet

Set the accuracy priority for a booklet.

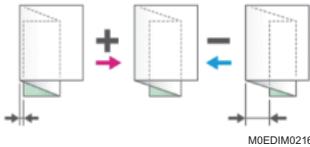
This function can be used with Booklet Finisher.

Setting Item	Values	Default Value
01: Setting	Speed Priority Accuracy Priority	Speed Priority

07: Finishing: Fold

0701: Z-fold Position 1

Adjust the fold position 1 for Z-folding using the Paper Folding Unit.

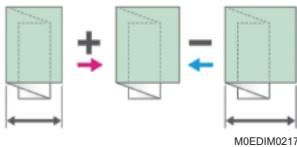


5

Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: A3 SEF	0	4	-4	0.1	mm
02: B4 JIS SEF					
03: A4 SEF					
04: 11 × 17 SEF					
05: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14 SEF					
06: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 SEF					
07: 8K SEF					
08: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ SEF					
09: Other Paper Sizes					

0702: Z-fold Position 2

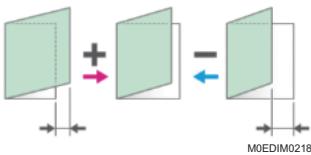
Adjust the fold position 2 for Z-folding using the Paper Folding Unit.



Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: A3 SEF	0	4	-4	0.2	mm
02: B4 JIS SEF					
03: A4 SEF					
04: 11 × 17 SEF					
05: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14 SEF					
06: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 SEF					
07: 8K SEF					
08: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ SEF					
09: Other Paper Sizes					

0703: Half Fold Position

Adjust the folding position when Folding in Two is done by the Paper Folding Unit. It applies when Single Folding is selected.

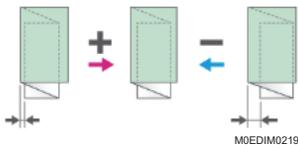


Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: A3 SEF	0	4	-4	0.1	mm
02: B4 JIS SEF					
03: A4 SEF					
04: 11 × 17 SEF					
05: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14 SEF					
06: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 SEF					
07: 12 × 18 SEF					
08: 8K SEF					
09: B5 JIS SEF					
10: 13×19 SEF					
11: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ SEF					
12: 12 ³ / ₅ × 19 ¹ / ₅ SEF					
13: 12 ³ / ₅ × 18 ¹ / ₂ SEF					
14: 13 × 19 ¹ / ₅ SEF					
15: 13 × 18 SEF					
16: SRA3 SEF					
17: SRA4 SEF					
18: A4 LEF					
19: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 LEF					
20: Other Paper Sizes					

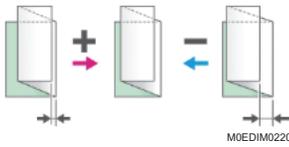
0704: Letter Fold-out Position 1: 1 sheet Fold

Adjust the folding position on the front end side when Outside 3 Folding is done by the Paper Folding Unit. It is applied when Single Folding is selected.

On paper of the size A3 SEF, 11 × 17 SEF, or Other Paper Sizes



On paper of the size B4 JIS SEF, A4 SEF, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 14$ SEF, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$ SEF, or $8\frac{1}{2} \times 13\frac{2}{5}$ SEF



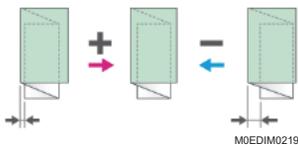
Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: A3 SEF	0	4	-4	0.1	mm
02: B4 JIS SEF					
03: A4 SEF					
04: 11×17 SEF					
05: $8\frac{1}{2} \times 14$ SEF					
06: $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$ SEF					
07: $8\frac{1}{2} \times 13\frac{2}{5}$ SEF					
08: Other Paper Sizes					

5

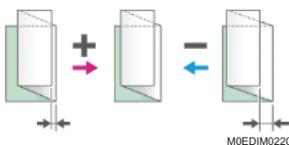
0705: Letter Fold-out Position 1: Multi-sheet Fold

Adjust the folding position on the front end side when Outside 3 Folding is done by the Paper Folding Unit. It is applied when Overlap Folding is selected.

On paper of the size A4 SEF, or Other Paper Sizes



On paper of the size $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$ SEF



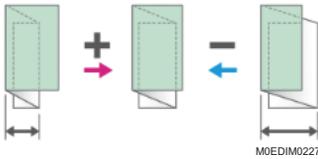
Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: A4 SEF	0	4	-4	0.1	mm
02: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 SEF					
03: Other Paper Sizes					

0706: Letter Fold-out Position 2: 1 sheet Fold

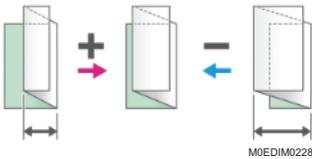
Adjust the folding position on the rear end side when Outside 3 Folding is done by the Paper Folding Unit. It is applied when Single Folding is selected.

On paper of the size A3 SEF, 11 × 17 SEF, or Other Paper Sizes

5



On paper of the size B4 JIS SEF, A4 SEF, 8¹/₂ × 14 SEF, 8¹/₂ × 11 SEF, or 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅ SEF

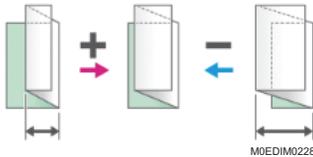


Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: A3 SEF	0	4	-4	0.1	mm
02: B4 JIS SEF					
03: A4 SEF					
04: 11 × 17 SEF					
05: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14 SEF					
06: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 SEF					
07: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ SEF					
08: Other Paper Sizes					

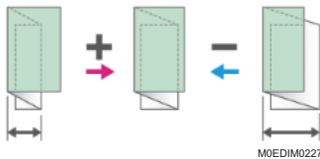
0707: Letter Fold-out Position 2: Multi-sheet Fold

Adjust the folding position on the rear end side when Outside 3 Folding is done by the Paper Folding Unit. It is applied when Overlap Folding is selected.

On paper of the size A4 SEF, or $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$ SEF



On paper of the size Other Paper Sizes

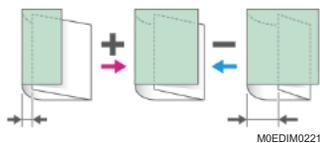


Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: A4 SEF	0	4	-4	0.1	mm
02: $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$ SEF					
03: Other Paper Sizes					

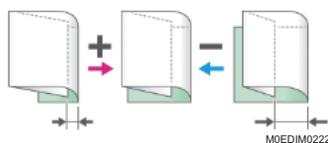
0708: Letter Fold-in Position 1: 1 sheet Fold

Adjust the folding position on the front end side when Inside 3 Folding is done by the Paper Folding Unit. It applies when Single Folding is selected.

On paper of the size A3 SEF, 11×17 SEF, or Other Paper Sizes



On paper of the size A4 SEF, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 14$ SEF, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$ SEF, or $8\frac{1}{2} \times 13\frac{2}{5}$ SEF



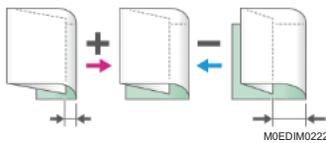
Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: A3 SEF	0	4	-4	0.1	mm
02: A4 SEF					
03: 11 × 17 SEF					
04: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14 SEF					
05: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 SEF					
06: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ SEF					
07: Other Paper Sizes					

5

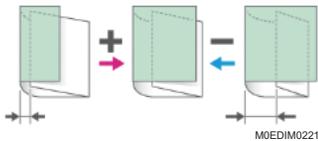
0709: Letter Fold-in Position 1: Multi-sheet Fold

Adjust the folding position on the front end side when Inside 3 Folding is done by the Paper Folding Unit. It applies when Overlap Folding is selected.

On paper of the size A4 SEF, or 8¹/₂ × 11 SEF



On paper of the size Other Paper Sizes

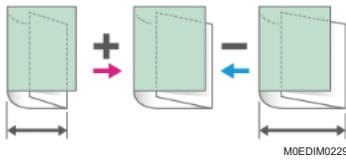


Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: A4 SEF	0	4	-4	0.1	mm
02: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 SEF					
03: Other Paper Sizes					

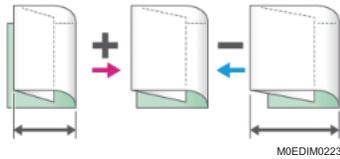
0710: Letter Fold-in Position 2: 1 sheet Fold

Adjust the folding position on the rear end side when Inside 3 Folding is done by the Paper Folding Unit. It applies when Single Folding is selected.

On paper of the size A3 SEF, 11 × 17 SEF, or Other Paper Sizes



On paper of the size A4 SEF, 8¹/₂ × 14 SEF, 8¹/₂ × 11 SEF, or 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅ SEF

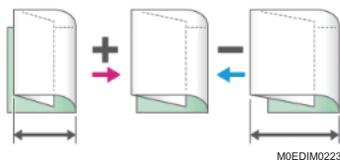


Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: A3 SEF	0	4	-4	0.1	mm
02: A4 SEF					
03: 11 × 17 SEF					
04: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14 SEF					
05: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 SEF					
06: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ SEF					
07: Other Paper Sizes					

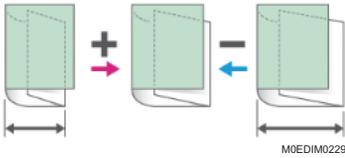
0711: Letter Fold-in Position 2: Multi-sheet Fold

Adjust the folding position on the rear end side when Inside 3 Folding is done by the Paper Folding Unit. It applies when Overlap Folding is selected.

On paper of the size A4 SEF, or 8¹/₂ × 11 SEF



On paper of the size Other Paper Sizes

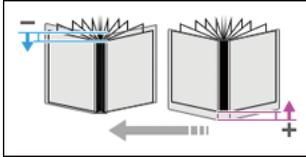


Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: A4 SEF	0	4	-4	0.1	mm
02: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 SEF					
03: Other Paper Sizes					

08: Finishing: Perfect Binder

0801: Cover Sheet Position for Perfect Binding: Across Feed

For Perfect Binding, correct the positional deviation in the vertical direction (top and bottom) of the front cover and middle paper bundle.

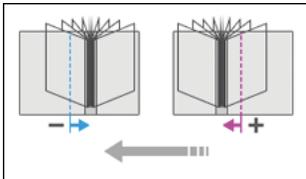


Setting Item	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Setting	0	5	-5	0.1	mm

5

0802: Cover Sheet Position for Perfect Binding: With Feed

Perfect Binding, correct the positional deviation in the horizontal direction (left and right) of the front cover and middle paper bundle.



Setting Item	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Setting	0	5	-5	0.1	mm

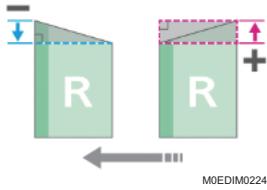
0803: Perfect Binding Finishing Angle

Adjust the right angle of the three sides when cutting a bundle of paper.

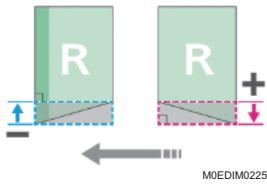
Apply this adjustment if the three edges of the deck of paper cut by the perfect binder are not square.

Enter the distance from the square part at each edge.

On Head Edge

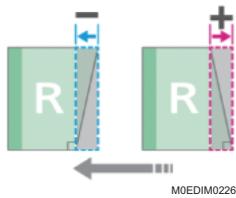


On Tail Edge



5

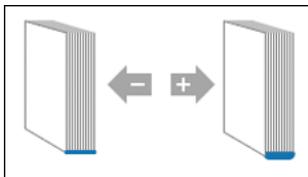
On Fore Edge



Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Head Edge	0	10	-10	0.1	mm
02: Tail Edge					
03: Fore Edge					

0804: Applying Binding Glue

Adjust the amount of glue for Perfect Binding.

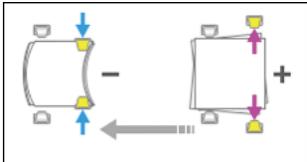


Setting Item	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: Setting	0	0.3	-0.3	0.05	mm

09: Finishing: Stacker

0901: Paper Alignment in Stacker Tray: Across Feed 1

Adjust the alignment width in Main Jogger at the Stacker to reduce dispersion of sheets at right angles due to paper size, thickness, curl, etc.

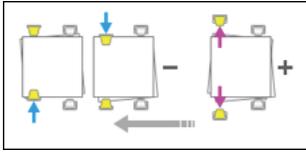


5

Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: A3 SEF	0	1	-1	0.1	mm
02: B4 JIS SEF					
03: A4 LEF					
04: A4 SEF					
05: B5 JIS LEF					
06: B5 JIS SEF					
07: A5 LEF					
08: A5 SEF					
09: 11 × 17 SEF					
10: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14 SEF					
11: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 LEF					
12: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 SEF					
13: 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ LEF					
14: 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ SEF					
15: Other Paper Sizes					

0902: Paper Alignment in Stacker Tray: Across Feed 2

Adjust the alignment width in Sub Jogger at the Stacker to reduce dispersion of sheets at right angles due to paper size, thickness, curl, etc.

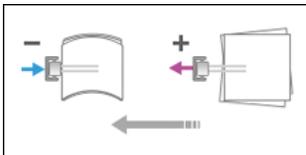


Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: A3 SEF	0	1	-1	0.1	mm
02: B4 JIS SEF					
03: 11 × 17 SEF					
04: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14 SEF					
05: Other Paper Sizes					

5

0903: Paper Alignment in Stacker Tray: With Feed

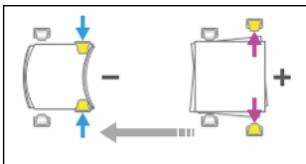
Adjust the alignment position of the Tip Stopper at the Stacker to reduce variations of paper orientation in the feeding direction due to paper size, thickness, curl, etc.



Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: A3 SEF	0	1	-1	0.1	mm
02: B4 JIS SEF					
03: A4 LEF					
04: A4 SEF					
05: B5 JIS LEF					
06: B5 JIS SEF					
07: A5 LEF					
08: A5 SEF					
09: 11 × 17 SEF					
10: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14 SEF					
11: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 LEF					
12: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 SEF					
13: 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ LEF					
14: 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ SEF					
15: Other Paper Sizes					

0904: Paper Alignment in 2nd Stacker Tray: Across Feed 1

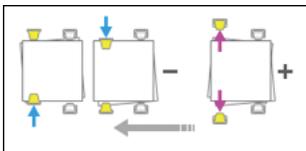
Adjust the alignment width of the Main Jogger of the Second Stacker. It reduces variations in paper orientation at right angle due to paper size, thickness, curl, etc.



Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: A3 SEF	0	1	-1	0.1	mm
02: B4 JIS SEF					
03: A4 LEF					
04: A4 SEF					
05: B5 JIS LEF					
06: B5 JIS SEF					
07: A5 LEF					
08: A5 SEF					
09: 11 × 17 SEF					
10: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14 SEF					
11: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 LEF					
12: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 SEF					
13: 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ LEF					
14: 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ SEF					
15: Other Paper Sizes					

0905: Paper Alignment in 2nd Stacker Tray: Across Feed 2

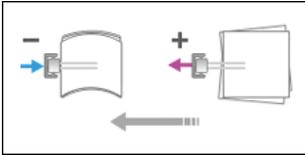
Adjust the alignment width of the Sub Jogger of the Second Stacker. It reduces variations in paper orientation at right angle due to paper size, thickness, curl, etc.



Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: A3 SEF	0	1	-1	0.1	mm
02: B4 JIS SEF					
03: 11 × 17 SEF					
04: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14 SEF					
05: Other Paper Sizes					

0906: Paper Alignment in 2nd Stacker Tray: With Feed

Adjust the alignment position of the Tip Stopper of the Second Stacker. It reduces variations in paper alignment in the feeding direction due to paper size, thickness, curl, etc.



Setting Items	Default Value	Max. Value	Min. Value	Step	Unit
01: A3 SEF	0	1	-1	0.1	mm
02: B4 JIS SEF					
03: A4 LEF					
04: A4 SEF					
05: B5 JIS LEF					
06: B5 JIS SEF					
07: A5 LEF					
08: A5 SEF					
09: 11 × 17 SEF					
10: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14 SEF					
11: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 LEF					
12: 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11 SEF					
13: 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ LEF					
14: 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ SEF					
15: Other Paper Sizes					

0907: Maximum Stack Quantity in Stacker Tray

Specify the maximum number of sheets that can be stacked on the stacker tray. If the unit detects that the number of sheets reaches the set upper limit, a warning message will appear.

The maximum number of sheets you can set differs depending on the size, thickness, and paper curl. Set the maximum number by specifying a ratio based on the number of sheets. Select [Large Size] when using paper whose vertical and horizontal lengths are 210 mm or longer whose area is 8¹/₂ × 11 or wider. Select [Small Size] when using other size paper.

Major paper sizes that apply to each item are as follows:

- Large Size: A3 SEF or larger (up to $13 \times 19\frac{1}{5}$ SEF), B4 JIS SEF, A4 SEF/LEF, 11×17 SEF, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 14$ SEF, $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$ SEF/LEF
- Small Size: B5 JIS SEF/LEF, A5 SEF/LEF, $5\frac{1}{2} \times 8\frac{1}{2}$ SEF/LEF

Setting Items	Selections	Default Value
01: Large Size	100% 75% 50% 25%	100%
02: Small Size	100% 75% 50% 25%	50%

21: Finishing: Interposer

2101: Detect JAM573

Set ON / OFF for JAM573 (detection of multi feed).

Setting Items	Values	Default Value
01: Interposer Upper Tray	Off On	On

2101: Detect JAM574

Set ON / OFF for JAM574 (detection of multi feed).

Setting Items	Values	Default Value
01: Interposer Lower Tray	Off On	On

2102: Interposer Fan Setting

Specify the fan operation of Twin interposer.

When it is [On], air is blown to the edge of sheets to separate them in close contact.

Setting Item	Values
01: Interposer Upper Tray	Auto
02: Interposer Lower Tray	On Off

6. Troubleshooting

Alert Sounds

The machine notifies you with an alert sound when a paper jam occurs or another problem occurs. Listen to the alert sound for one of the patterns described below, and perform the required procedure accordingly.

Sound pattern *1	Condition	Solution
Two long beeps	[Sound of Completion (Type)]	The machine is ready for use after the machine is turned on or recovers from the sleep mode.
Five long beeps (repeating four times)	[Sound of Alert (Type)]	Check that paper is loaded in the paper tray.
Five short beeps (repeating five times)	[Sound of Error (Type)]	Check the message displayed on the screen, and resolve the problem by removing the jammed paper or replacing the toner.

*1 The factory default sound pattern is used as an example in the table above.

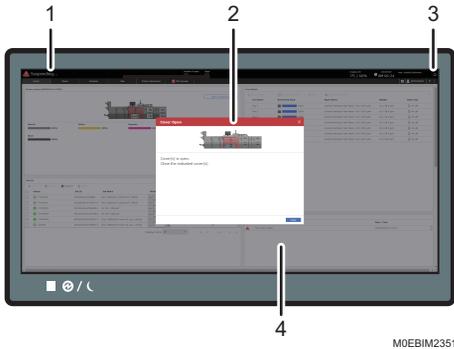
Note

- You can specify the volume and type of alert sound in  ► [Notification Sound] under "Printer Settings". The type of sound can be specified for each condition described in the table above. You can also specify the volume of the sound emitted.
- See "Printer Settings", User Guide.

Checking the Messages Displayed on the Control Panel

The machine displays messages on the control panel to notify the user of the machine status. Check the status, and operate as required.

page 253 "When a Message Appears and the Machine Cannot Be Operated"



6

1. Machine Status

Shows the machine status in a simplified form. You can check whether the machine is ready to print, and other machine conditions.

2. Emergency Message Screen

Displays a detailed message screen when the machine requires immediate user action.

3. Alarm Icon

This icon is displayed when a message that requires user action is displayed. Press the alarm icon (🔔) to view the message when a screen other than the [Home] hub is displayed.

4. [System Messages] tile in the [Home] hub

You can check the system messages.

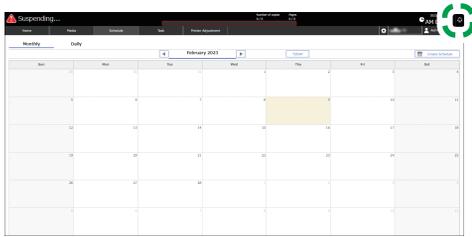
⬇️ Note

- The operator attention indicator also lights up when a message that requires user action is displayed.
- See page 19 "Guide to Names and Functions of Components".

When an Alarm Icon Is Displayed

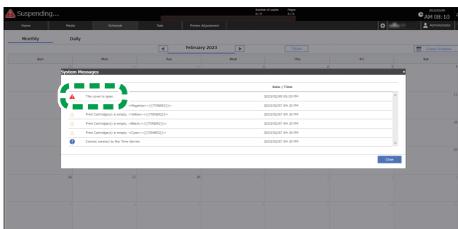
Press the alarm icon (🔔) to check the message.

1. Press the alarm icon (🔔).



MOEBPM7350

2. Press the message to check it in detail, and act accordingly.



MOEBPM7351

When the Machine Cannot Be Operated

↓ Note

- If a message is displayed on the screen, check the message.
- page 253 "When a Message Appears and the Machine Cannot Be Operated"

Condition	Cause	Solution and reference
The screen of the control panel is not lit.	The machine is in the Low Power Mode or Sleep Mode.	Touch the screen.
Nothing is displayed when you touch the screen.	The power of the machine is turned off.	Check that the main power indicator is not lit, and then turn on the main power of the machine. See page 14 "Turning On and Off the Power".
The power of the machine does not come on.	The AC power switch is not turned "On".	Turn the AC power switch "On". See "Notes on Usage of the Machine", User Guide.
The screen remains turned on and the machine does not enter the sleep mode when you press Energy Saving (⏻).	The machine is in a condition that does not allow the machine to enter the sleep mode.	Check the conditions in which the machine does not enter the sleep mode. See page 14 "Turning On and Off the Power".
The machine does not shut down when more than 15 minutes have passed after you press the main power switch.	The shutdown operation could not be performed normally.	Press the main power switch again.
The power of the machine is turned off automatically.	[Main Power Off] is specified in the weekly timer.	Check the  [Weekly Timer] setting under "Printer Settings".

When a Message Appears and the Machine Cannot Be Operated

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"Adjusting..."	The machine is performing adjustment to stabilize image quality.	<p>Wait a while.</p> <p>The machine may perform image quality stabilization during operation. The process time and interval vary depending on the number of printed sheets, paper type and size, or environmental conditions including the temperature or humidity.</p>
<p>"EC has occurred."</p> <p>"Turn main power switch off then on. If the error appears again, please call service."</p> <p>"Machine Number:"</p>	A problem is occurring on the machine.	<p>Turn the power off, wait for 10 seconds after the main power indicator turns off, and then turn the power on again.</p> <p>See page 14 "Turning On and Off the Power".</p>
"Printer shut down requested. Shutting down. Wait time: 660 Second(s)"	The power of the machine was turned off while the machine was starting up or in the standby mode.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wait until the power is turned off. Do not turn the power on while the message is displayed. If you turn the power on, follow the message displayed on the control panel. Check the correct procedure for turning the power on. <p>See page 14 "Turning On and Off the Power".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The time it takes for the machine to shut down may vary depending on the system configuration or working environment.
<p>"Temperature Outside Optimal Range"</p> <p>"Humidity Outside Optimal Range"</p>	The temperature or humidity of the environment in which the machine is placed is outside the supported range.	<p>Check the room temperature and whether it satisfies the operational requirements of the machine. If the machine has just been moved to the current location, leave it be for some time and allow it to adapt to the environment before use.</p> <p>See "Installation Requirements After Moving the Machine", User Guide.</p>

Message	Condition	Solution and reference
"The following failures have occurred." "ECxx-x-xxx-xx-x" "The following functions cannot be used."	The machine needs to be repaired.	Consider repairing the machine.
"Warming Up..."	The machine is recovering from the sleep mode.	Wait a while. Turn off the power of the machine if the message persists after nine minutes, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power. See page 14 "Turning On and Off the Power".

Note

- If the message persists even after you have performed the operations as instructed in the following message, a malfunction may temporarily occur on the machine. Turn off the power of the machine, wait for 10 seconds or more after confirming that the main power indicator is turned off, and then turn on the power.
- See page 14 "Turning On and Off the Power".
 - "Cover Open"
 - "Replace Print Cartridge(s)."
 - "Add staples."
 - "Waste Toner Bottle is full."
 - "Hole Punch Receptacle is full."
 - "No paper."
 - "Output Tray Full"

When Machine Login Fails

Message	Cause	Solution and reference
"Failed to log in. Either the user name or the password is incorrect."	An incorrect login user name or password was entered.	Enter the correct login user name or password.
"You do not have the privileges to use the selected printer."	The specified login user is not allowed to use the printer.	Consult the user administrator.

When Paper Is Jammed

Remove the jammed sheet by following the procedure described in the animated illustration displayed on the control panel. If paper jams occur frequently, check that the paper size in the tray, and the [Media] hub displayed on the control panel are the same.

Be careful not to rip the jammed paper and leave small pieces inside the machine when removing. Hold on the left and right edges of the paper firmly and apply force evenly to pull out the paper.

CAUTION

- There are highly-heated parts inside the machine. When removing misfed paper, do not touch areas other than those specified in this manual. Touching those areas can result in burns.

- When replacing paper or removing jammed paper, make sure not to trap or injure your fingers.

- When operating the machine, do not put your hand inside the booklet finisher tray of the finisher's staple unit. You may trap your fingers in the machine's gap and injury can result.

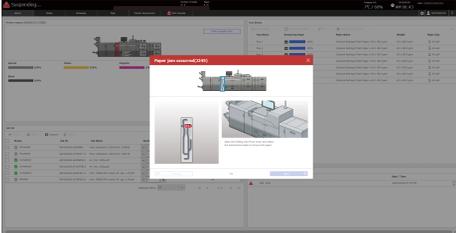
- Do not put your hand under the tray. Your hand may get caught.

Important

- When clearing misfeeds, do not turn off the power. If you do, your settings will be lost.
- Only perform the operation described in the animated illustration. Failure to do so may degrade the print quality or cause a malfunction.
- There are hot surfaces inside the machine. Before removing jammed paper in the fusing unit, wait until the temperature of the covers in the fusing unit and duplex unit to cool down adequately.
- When removing the paper, be careful not to touch the glass surface that comes in contact with the feeding paper.
- When removing jammed paper, you can touch only those areas explicitly indicated in the manual.
- Do not remove the fusing unit. Doing so will result in loss of print quality.
- When removing jammed paper in the fusing unit, remove the paper from the right side first. Only when you cannot remove the paper from the right side, remove it from the left side. Also, check that no paper remains in the fusing unit.
- Close the fuser unit cover slowly after removing a paper jam in the unit. You may damage the fuser belt or other parts in the unit if you close the cover too fast.
- If a paper jam occurs in the fold unit, and the LED is flashing when you open the front cover, close the cover, open it again, and then check if the LED is turned off. Do not remove paper jam while the LED is flashing. Doing so may cause a malfunction to occur.

- If paper jams occur frequently in the same location, perform "Adjust Print Quality" to check for the correct method to load paper on the machine, or adjust the machine settings. For details about "Adjust Print Quality", see "Using "Adjust Print Quality"", User Guide.

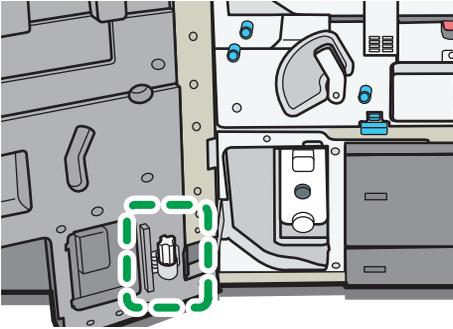
1. Check the part where the paper jam occurred on the screen.



2. Follow the procedure described in the animated illustration to remove the jammed paper.
3. Close all covers that have been opened.

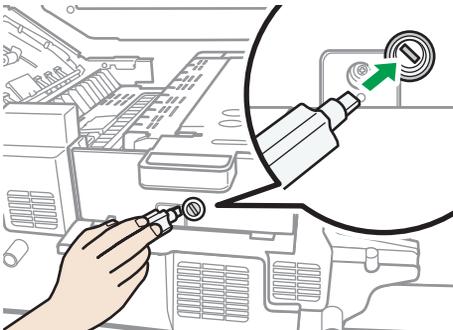
↓ Note

- After closing the emergency message of paper jam occurring, press the message for the JAM on the [System Messages] tile in the [Home] hub. On a screen other than the [Home] hub, press the alarm icon (🔔), and press the message for the JAM on the "System Messages" screen.
- Multiple locations of paper jams may be indicated simultaneously. If this occurs, check all the locations that are displayed.
- If the jammed paper was torn apart while removing it, check that all pieces are accounted for.
- When a paper jam occurs in C6, see the procedure that is shown in the animation, and remove the jammed paper. Before closing the door, pull out the unit while holding on to lever C2, and check the space where the unit occupied from below. If paper is caught between the belt and the unit, remove the paper. Then, check from below that no paper is caught between the unit and the belt directly above the C6 section. If paper is caught between the belt and the unit, remove the paper. When you are finished checking, close the door.
- When a paper jam occurs in Rb1–Rb5, check if paper is ejected on the paper holder of the Finisher Shift Tray. When paper is ejected on the paper holder, remove the ejected paper first, and then remove any jammed paper inside the finisher.
- When a paper jam occurs in D, and you cannot remove the jammed paper from the right side of the fusing unit, use the knob behind the left front cover.
 1. Remove the knob behind the left front cover.



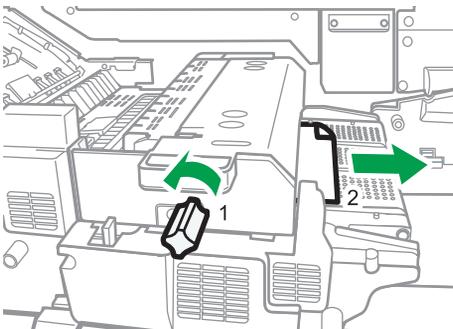
M0EBIM2352

2. Firmly insert the knob into the slot on the fusing unit aligning its tip to the direction of the slot.



M0EBIM2353

3. Turn the knob counterclockwise until the paper is ejected to the right side of the fusing unit to remove the jammed paper.



M0EBIM2354

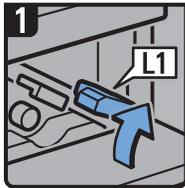
4. Store the knob in its original location.

When the Animation Does Not Appear

If a paper jam has occurred in certain locations, the procedure for removing the jammed paper is not displayed on the control panel. Open the front cover in the place corresponding to the letter displayed (on the control panel), and then proceed as instructed on the sticker or sheet inside the front cover, or in

the following descriptions. If a lamp is lit when the front cover is opened, open the guide plate at the indicated location, and remove the jammed paper.

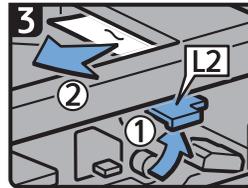
When L is displayed



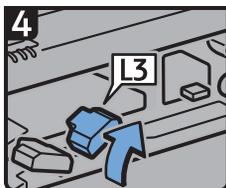
- Open the stacker upper cover.
- Raise lever L1.



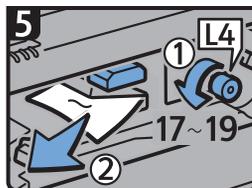
- Remove misfed paper.
- Return lever L1 to its original position.



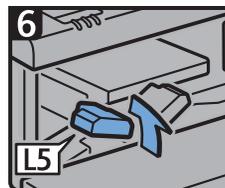
- Raise lever L2, and then remove misfed paper.
- Return lever L2 to its original position.



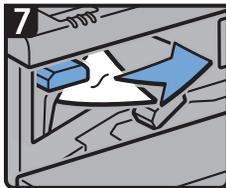
- Raise lever L3.



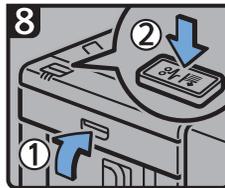
- Turn knob L4 17 to 19 times counterclockwise, and then remove misfed paper.
- Return lever L3 to its original position.



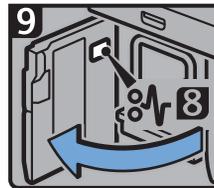
- Raise lever L5.



- Remove misfed paper.
- Return lever L5 to its original position.



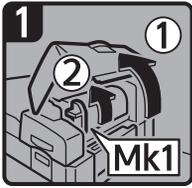
- Close the stacker upper cover.
- Press the paper jam button on the stacker control panel.



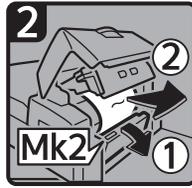
- Open the stacker front cover.
- Remove misfed paper, and then close the stacker front cover.

MOEBIM2399

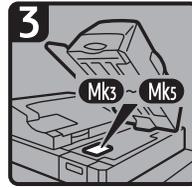
When Mk1 or Mk2 is displayed



- Open the interposer and Mk1 covers.



- Open the Mk2 cover, and then remove misfed paper.



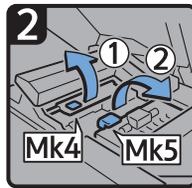
- Close the Mk2, Mk1, and interposer covers.
- Remove paper if the display reports a paper jam in Mk3 - Mk5.

CXG010

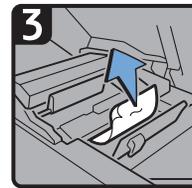
When Mk3 – Mk5 is displayed



- Raise the interposer unit.
- Open the upper left cover (Mk3).



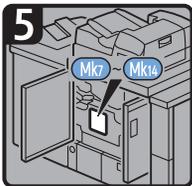
- Raise levers Mk4 and Mk5.



- Remove misfed paper.



- Remove misfed paper.
- Return levers Mk4 and Mk5 to their original positions.
- Return the upper left cover (Mk3) and interposer unit to their original positions.



- Check that the LED on the front right cover of the perfect binder is unlit.
- Remove paper if the display reports a paper jam in Mk7 - Mk14.

CXG011

When Mk6 is displayed



- Open the front cover of the bridge unit (to the right of the perfect binder).
- Raise lever Mk6, and then remove misfed paper.
- Return lever Mk6 to its original position.
- Close the front cover of the bridge unit.

CXG012

When Mk7 or Mk8 is displayed



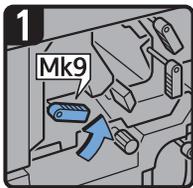
- Check that the LED on the front right cover of the perfect binder is unlit.
- Open the front right and front left covers of the perfect binder.
- Raise lever Mk7, and then remove misfed paper.
- Return lever Mk7 to its original position.



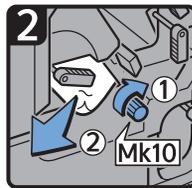
- Raise lever Mk8, and then remove misfed paper.
- Return lever Mk8 to its original position.
- Close the front left and front right covers of the perfect binder.

CXG013

When Mk9 – Mk11 is displayed



- Check that the LED on the front right cover of the perfect binder is unlit.
- Open the front right and front left covers of the perfect binder.
- Raise lever Mk9.



- Turn knob Mk10, and then remove misfed paper.
- Return lever Mk9 to its original position.



- Lower lever Mk11.



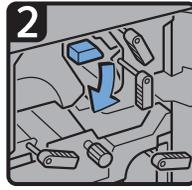
- Remove misfed paper.
- Return lever Mk11 to its original position.
- Close the front left and front right covers of the perfect binder.

CXG014

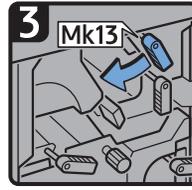
When Mk12 – Mk14 is displayed



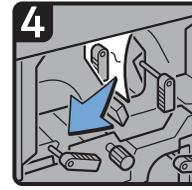
- Check that the LED on the front right cover of the perfect binder is unlit.
- Open the front right and front left covers of the perfect binder.
- Raise lever Mk12, and then remove misfed paper.



- Return lever Mk12 to its original position.



- Turn lever Mk13 to the left.



- Remove misfed paper.



- Lower lever Mk14, and then remove misfed paper.
- Return levers Mk14 and Mk13 to their original positions.
- Close the front left and front right covers of the perfect binder.

6

CXG015

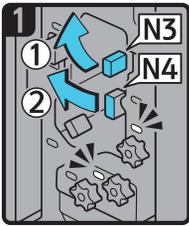
When N1 is displayed



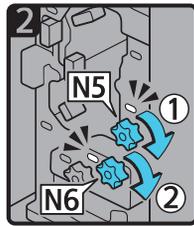
- Open the folding unit front cover.
- Raise lever N1.
- Remove misfed paper.
- Return lever N1 back to its original position.
- Close the folding unit front cover.

MOEBIM2360

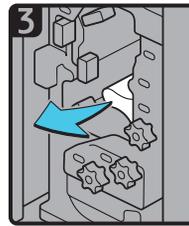
When N3-N6 is displayed



- Open the folding unit front cover.
- Raise lever N3.
- Push lever N4 to the left.



- Turn knob N5 clockwise.
- Turn knob N6 clockwise.



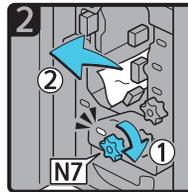
- Remove misfed paper.
- Return levers N3 and N4 back to their original positions.
- Close the folding unit front cover.

MOEBIM2361

When N7 or N8 is displayed



- Open the folding unit front cover.
- Raise lever N8.
- Remove misfed paper.
- Return lever N8 back to its original position.
- Close the folding unit front cover.



- Open the folding unit front cover.
- Turn knob N7 clockwise.
- Remove misfed paper.
- Close the folding unit front cover.

6

MOEBIM2362

When N9 is displayed



- Open the folding unit front cover.
- Turn lever N9 to the right.
- Remove misfed paper.
- Return lever N9 back to its original position.
- Close the folding unit front cover.

MOEBIM2363

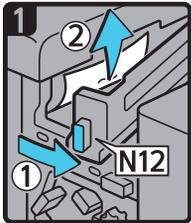
When N11 is displayed



- Open the folding unit front cover.
- Push lever N11 to the left.
- Remove misfed paper.
- Return lever N11 back to its original position.
- Close the folding unit front cover.

MOEBIM2364

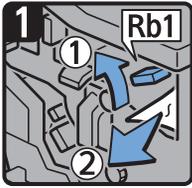
When N12 is displayed



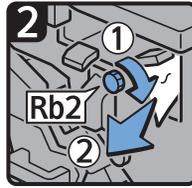
- Open the folding unit front cover.
- Push lever N12 to the right.
- Remove misfed paper.
- Return lever N12 back to its original position.

MOEBIM2365

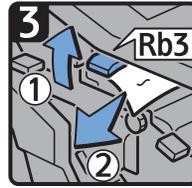
When Rb1 – Rb5 is displayed



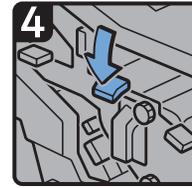
- Open the finisher front cover.
- Raise lever Rb1, and then remove misfed paper.



- Turn knob Rb2, and then remove misfed paper.
- Return lever Rb1 to its original position.



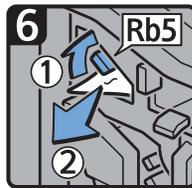
- Raise lever Rb3, and then remove misfed paper.



- Return lever Rb3 to its original position.



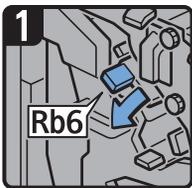
- Turn lever Rb4 to the right, and then remove misfed paper.
- Return lever Rb4 to its original position.



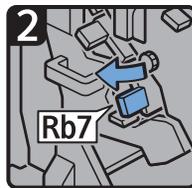
- Raise lever Rb5 to the right, and then remove misfed paper.
- Return lever Rb5 to its original position.
- Close the finisher front cover.

CXG020

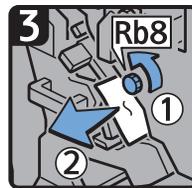
When Rb6 – Rb9 is displayed



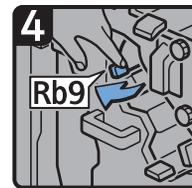
- Open the finisher front cover.
- Lower lever Rb6.



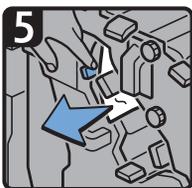
- Pull lever Rb7 to the left.



- Turn knob Rb8, and then remove misfed paper.
- Return levers Rb6 and Rb7 to their original positions.



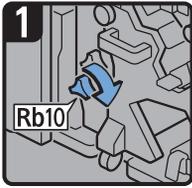
- Pull lever Rb9 to the left.



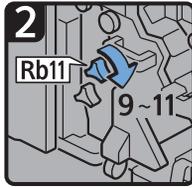
- Remove misfed paper.
- Close the finisher front cover.

CXG021

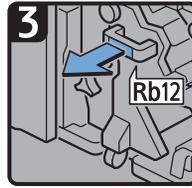
When Rb10 – Rb17 is displayed



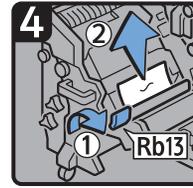
- Open the finisher front cover.
- Turn knob Rb10.



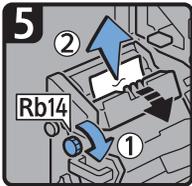
- Turn knob Rb11 9 to 11 times.



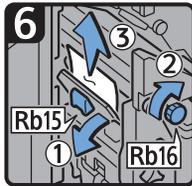
- Pull handle Rb12, and then pull out the staple unit.



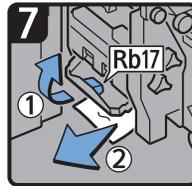
- Raise lever Rb13, and then remove misfed paper.
- Return lever Rb13 to its original position.



- Turn knob Rb14, and then remove misfed paper.



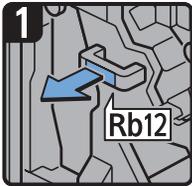
- Lower lever Rb15, and then turn knob Rb16.
- Remove misfed paper.



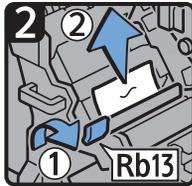
- Raise lever Rb17, and then remove misfed paper.
- Return lever Rb17 to its original position.
- Return the staple unit to its original position, and then close the finisher front cover.

CXG024

When Rb12 – Rb13 is displayed



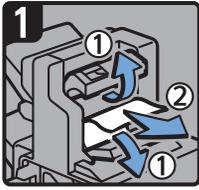
- Open the finisher front cover.
- Pull handle Rb12, and then pull out the staple unit.



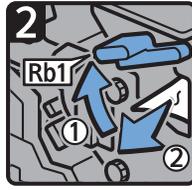
- Raise lever Rb13, and then remove misfed paper.
- Return lever Rb13 to its original position.
- Return the staple unit to its original position, and then close the finisher front cover.

CXG033

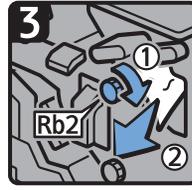
When Rb1 – Rb5 is displayed



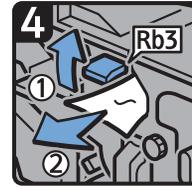
- Open the Finisher Shift Tray 1 Cover and remove the misfed paper.
- Then close the cover.



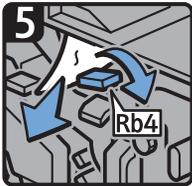
- Open the Rb1 guide board and remove the misfed paper.



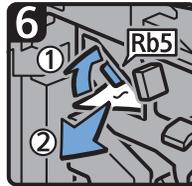
- Rotate Rb2 in the direction of the arrow to remove the paper and then close the guide board.



- Open the Rb3 guide board and remove the misfed paper.
- Then close the guide board.



- Open the Rb4 guide board and remove the misfed paper
- Then close the guide board.



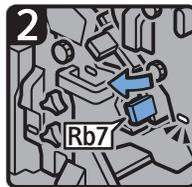
- Open the Rb5 guide board and remove the misfed paper.
- Then close the guide board.

EDB311

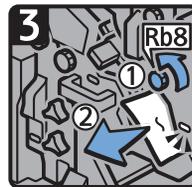
When Rb6 – Rb9 is displayed



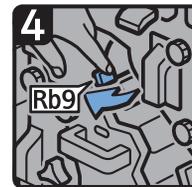
- Open the Rb6 guide board.



- Open the Rb7 guide board.



- Rotate Rb8 in the direction of the arrow to remove the misfed paper.



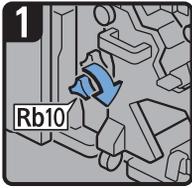
- Open the Rb9 guide board to the left.



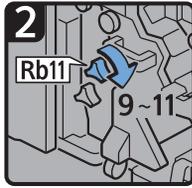
- Holding the Rb9 guide board, remove the paper.
- Close the finisher front cover.

EDB312

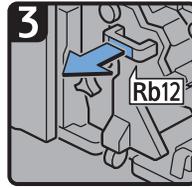
When Rb10 – Rb17 is displayed



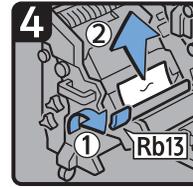
- Open the finisher front cover.
- Turn knob Rb10.



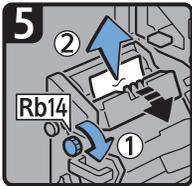
- Turn knob Rb11 9 to 11 times.



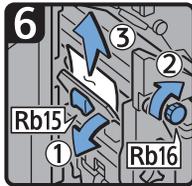
- Pull handle Rb12, and then pull out the staple unit.



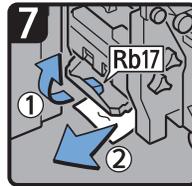
- Raise lever Rb13, and then remove misfed paper.
- Return lever Rb13 to its original position.



- Turn knob Rb14, and then remove misfed paper.



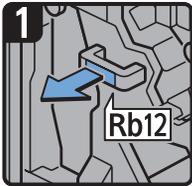
- Lower lever Rb15, and then turn knob Rb16.
- Remove misfed paper.



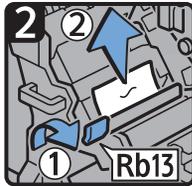
- Raise lever Rb17, and then remove misfed paper.
- Return lever Rb17 to its original position.
- Return the staple unit to its original position, and then close the finisher front cover.

CXG024

When Rb12 – Rb13 is displayed



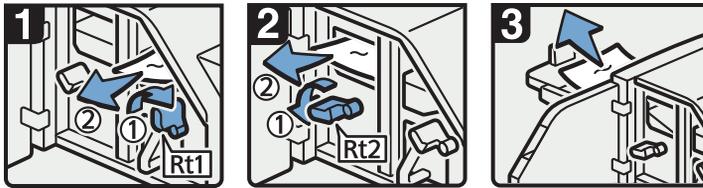
- Open the finisher front cover.
- Pull handle Rb12, and then pull out the staple unit.



- Raise lever Rb13, and then remove misfed paper.
- Return lever Rb13 to its original position.
- Return the staple unit to its original position, and then close the finisher front cover.

CXG033

When Rt1 or Rt2 is displayed



- Open the trimmer front cover.
- Turn lever Rt1 to the right, and then remove misfed paper.
- Return lever Rt1 to its original position.
- Hold down lever Rt2 and remove misfed paper.
- Remove misfed paper from the trimmer tray.
- Return lever Rt2 to its original position.
- Close the trimmer front cover.

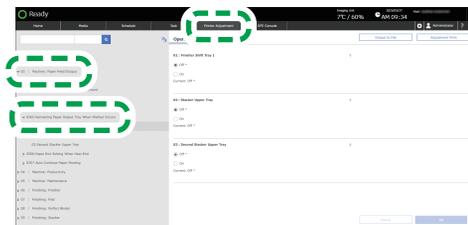
DFG010

Ejecting the Paper Jammed in the Post Processor Unit Automatically

You can specify to eject the jammed paper onto the specified tray automatically, and proceed with printing when a paper jam occurs in the finisher, booklet finisher, or high-capacity stacker.

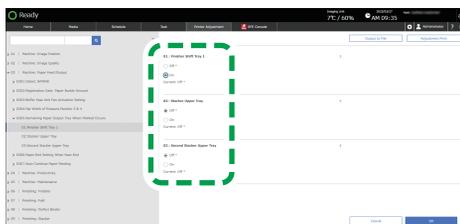
1. Press **[Printer Adjustment] hub** ▶ **03 | [Machine: Paper Feed/Output]** ▶ **0305: [Remaining Paper Output Tray When Misfeed Occurs]**.

On the item with ▶ displayed to its left, click ▶ to display its subordinate items.



MOEBPM7385

2. Specify **[On]** on the tray to which you want to eject the jammed paper.



MOEBPM7386

3. Press **[OK]**.

Note

- The jammed paper may not be ejected depending on its condition even if you enable this setting.

- If there are some sheets of paper already on the target tray, remove them as soon as possible because any jammed paper will be ejected onto them.
- After ejecting the jammed paper automatically, the machine displays a message prompting you to reset the device in which the paper jam occurs.

When a Staple Is Jammed

When removing a jammed staple, see the description inside the cover on the finisher.

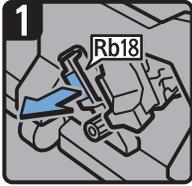
CAUTION

- When operating the machine, do not put your hand inside the booklet finisher tray of the finisher's staple unit. You may trap your fingers in the machine's gap and injury can result.

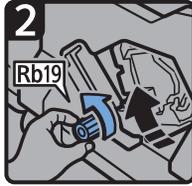
Note

- If jamming of staples occurs frequently, check that the paper is not curled.

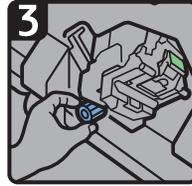
Booklet Finisher



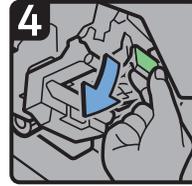
- Open the finisher front cover.
- Pull handle Rb18, and then pull out staple unit



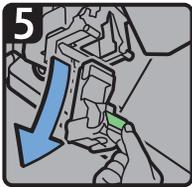
- Turn knob Rb19 counter clockwise to rotate the staple unit.



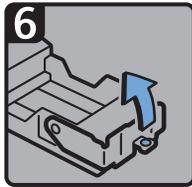
- Pull out the Waste Staple Receptacle, then empty it.



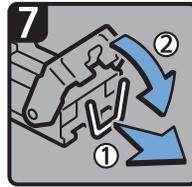
- Put the receptacle back.



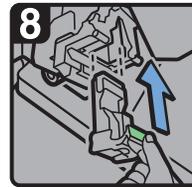
- Pull out the cartridge.



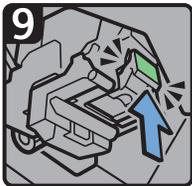
- Push the knob at the end of the face plate upward to open it.



- Remove jammed staple, and then push the knob at the end of the face plate downward to close the face plate.

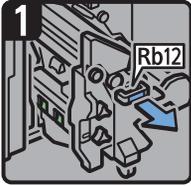


- Hold the lever and push in the cartridge until it clicks, then raise the lever.

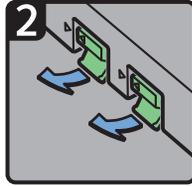


- Push the cartridge until it clicks.
- Return the staple unit to its original position.
- Close the finisher front cover.

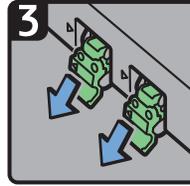
Booklet Finisher (Saddle Stitch)



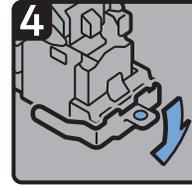
- Pull out the booklet staple unit.



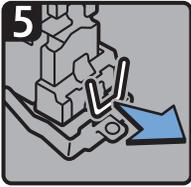
- Pull out the cartridge levers.



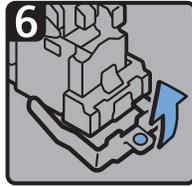
- Pull out the cartridge gently.



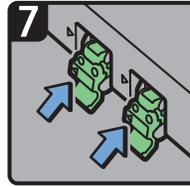
- Push the knob at the end of the face plate downward to open it.



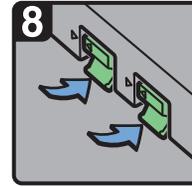
- Remove jammed staples.



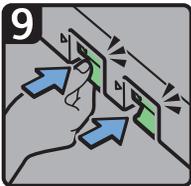
- Push the knob at the end of the face plate upward to close it.



- Push the cartridge into the unit in the direction indicated by the arrow in the figure.



- Push the cartridge into the unit in the direction indicated by the arrow in the figure.



- Push the cartridge in until you hear a clicking sound.
- Return the staple unit to its original position.
- Close the finisher front cover.

When the Hole Punch Receptacle Is Full

Select the message, and press [Replacement procedure]. Follow the procedure that is shown in the animation to remove the punch waste.

Note

- If the message remains even after you empty the receptacle, remove the receptacle and set it again.

Removing Staple Waste

Select the message, and press [Replacement procedure]. Follow the procedure that is shown in the animation to remove the waste staple.

Note

- While "Waste Staple Receptacle is full. Empty the Waste Staple Receptacle." is displayed, you cannot use the staple function.
- "Waste Staple Receptacle is full. Empty the Waste Staple Receptacle." is displayed until the staple waste box is reinstalled.
- If the message is still displayed, reinstall the staple waste box.

Removing Waste Paper

Select the message, and press [Replacement procedure]. Follow the procedure that is shown in the animation to remove the waste paper.

Note

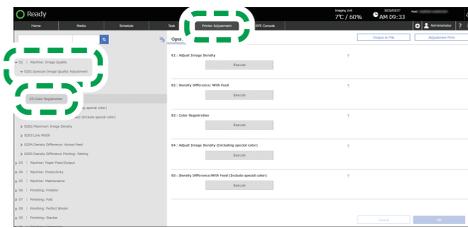
- While "Waste Paper Receptacle is full. Empty the Trimmer Waste Paper Receptacle." is displayed, you cannot use the perfect binder.
- While "Trimmer Waste Paper Receptacle is full. Empty the Trimmer Waste Paper Receptacle." is displayed, you cannot use the trimmer.
- "Waste Paper Receptacle is full. Empty the Trimmer Waste Paper Receptacle." or "Trimmer Waste Paper Receptacle is full. Empty the Trimmer Waste Paper Receptacle." is displayed until the receptacle is reinstalled.
- If the message is still displayed, reinstall the receptacle.

When a Deviation in Color Registration Appears

Misregistration of colors may occur when you move the machine, or while you perform printing operations repeatedly. When this occurs, execute [Color Registration] to adjust the related settings of the machine. The adjustment process takes approximately 30 seconds.

1. Press the [Printer Adjustment] hub ▶ 02 | [Machine: Image Quality] ▶ 0201:[Execute Image Quality Adjustment] ▶ 03:[Color Registration].

On the item with ▶ displayed to its left, click ▶ to display its subordinate items.



MOEBPM7370

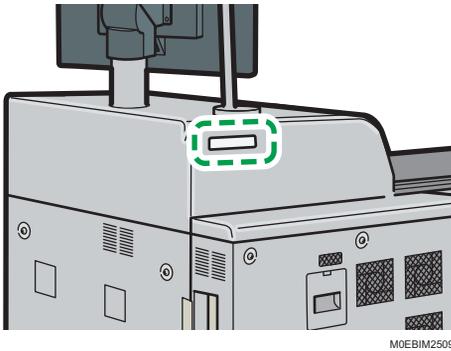
2. Press [Execute] under 03: "Color Registration".
3. Press [OK] when "Executed" appears.

7. Specifications for The Machine

Model-Specific Information

This section explains how you can identify the region your machine belongs to.

There is a label on the rear of the machine, located in the position shown below. The label contains details that identify the region your machine belongs to. Read the label.



The following information is region-specific. Read the information under the symbol that corresponds to the region of your machine.

 **Region A** (mainly Europe and Asia)

If the label contains the following, your machine is a Region A model:

- CODE XXXX -27, -29
- 220–240 V

 **Region B** (mainly North America)

If the label contains the following, your machine is a Region B model:

- CODE XXXX -17
- 208–240 V

Note

- Dimensions in this manual are given in two units of measure: metric and inch. If your machine is a Region A model, refer to the metric units. If your machine is a Region B model, refer to the inch units.
- If your machine is a Region A model and "CODE XXXX -27" is printed on the label, see " **Region A** (mainly Europe)" also.
- If your machine is a Region A model and "CODE XXXX -29" is printed on the label, see " **Region A** (mainly Asia)" also.

Specifications for the Main Unit

Note

- We have licenses from the authors to use their software including open sources. Refer to the files in the Licenses folder included in the supplied DVD-ROM for statements requested from the authors.

Item	Specifications
Configuration	Console
Memory	16 GB
SSD size	256 GB
Color	Full Color
Process	Laser beam scanning and electro-photographic printing
Warm-up time (23°C (73.4°F), rated voltage)	300 seconds or less
Print speed (Full Color / B&W)	85 sheets/minute (A4, 8 1/2 × 11) (When the productivity upgrade unit is attached: 95 sheets/minute)
Paper size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Trays 1–2: page 101 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types" Duplex: A3, A4, A5, B4, B5, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 13, 8 1/2 × 11, 8 1/4 × 14, 8 1/4 × 13, 8 × 13, 8 × 10, 7 1/4 × 10 1/2, 5 1/2 × 8 1/2, 8K, 16K, 12 × 18, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 13 × 19 1/5, 13 × 19, 12 3/5 × 19 1/5, 12 3/5 × 18 1/2, 13 × 18, SRA3, SRA4, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5, 226 × 310 mm, 310 × 432 mm, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5 Duplex (custom size): Vertical: 100.0–330.2 mm (3.94–13.00 inches) Horizontal: 200.0–1030.0 mm (7.87–40.56 inches)

Item	Specifications
Paper weight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Trays 1–2 and the bypass tray: page 101 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types" • Duplex: 40.0–470.0 g/m² (11–125 lb. Bond) <div style="border: 1px solid black; border-radius: 10px; padding: 2px; margin: 5px 0;">  Note </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The paper brand of usable paper of 400 g/m² (106 lb. Bond) or more is specified. For details, contact your service representative.
Resolution	2400 × 4800 dpi
Paper capacity (80 g/m ² , 21 lb. Bond)	page 101 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"
Duplex	Standard
Power requirements	<p> Region A (mainly Europe and Asia) 220–240 V, 16 A × 2, 50/60 Hz</p> <p> Region B (mainly North America) 208–240V, 16 A × 2, 50/60 Hz</p>
Power consumption (Main unit only)	<p>Ready: 300 W</p> <p>During printing: B&W: 3,000 W / Color: 3,000 W</p> <p>Maximum: 4,800 W or less</p> <p>The power level when the main switch is turned off and the power cord is plugged into an outlet: 1 W or less</p>
Power consumption (Complete system)	<p>Maximum: 4,800 W or less</p> <p>The complete system consists of the main unit, interposer, and bridge unit.</p>
Dimensions	<p>1,320 × 910 × 1,220 mm (51 × 36 × 48 inches)</p> <p>(excluding the control panel and the attention light)</p>
Space for main unit (W × D)	1,320 × 910 mm (51 × 36 inches)
Noise emission (Sound power level: Main unit only)	<p>Stand-by: 58.5 dB (A)</p> <p>Printing: B&W: 78.5 dB (A) / Color: 78.5 dB (A)</p>

Item	Specifications
Noise emission (Sound power level: Complete system)	Stand-by: 61 dB (A) Printing: 81.5 dB (A)
Noise emission (Sound pressure level: Main unit only)	Stand-by: 52.5 dB (A) Printing: B&W: 72.5 dB (A) / Color: 72.5 dB (A)
Noise emission (Sound pressure level: Complete system)	Stand-by: 55 dB (A) Printing: 75.5 dB (A)
Noise emission	<div style="border: 1px solid #0070C0; border-radius: 10px; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">  Note </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sound power levels and sound pressure levels are actual values measured in accordance with ISO 7779. <li>• Sound pressure levels are measured from the position of the bystander. <li>• The complete system consists of the main unit, 5th station upgrade kit, wide LCT, buffer pass unit, interposer, and booklet finisher.
Weight	Approx. 590 kg (1,301 lb.)

List of Specifications for External Options

Note

- For the product names of options, see page 11 "Abbreviated Names of Options".
- We have licenses from the authors to use their software including open sources. Refer to the files in the Licenses folder included in the supplied DVD-ROM for statements requested from the authors.

Specifications for Finisher

Item	Specifications
Paper size for the Finisher Shift Tray 1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fold not applied: A3, A4, A5, A6, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, B6 JIS, 11 × 17, 8¹/₂ × 14, 8¹/₂ × 13, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8¹/₄ × 14, 8¹/₄ × 13, 8 × 13, 8 × 10, 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂, 8K, 16K, 12 × 18, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 13 × 19¹/₅, 13 × 19, 12³/₅ × 19¹/₅, 12³/₅ × 18¹/₂, 13 × 18, SRA3, SRA4, 226 × 310, 310 × 432, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅, 4¹/₅ × 5¹/₂, custom size • With Z-fold: A3, A4, B4 JIS, 11 × 17, 8¹/₂ × 14, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8K, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅ • With Half Fold: A3, B4 JIS, A4, 12 × 18, 11 × 17, 8¹/₂ × 14, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8K, 13 × 19¹/₅, 13 × 19, 12³/₅ × 19¹/₅, 12³/₅ × 18¹/₂, 13 × 18, SRA3, SRA4, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅ • With Letter Fold-out: A3, 11 × 17 • With Letter Fold-in: A3, 11 × 17, custom size (Paper length 432–700 mm (17–27.6 inches))

Item	Specifications
<p>Paper weight for the Finisher Shift Tray 1</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fold not applied: 52.3–350.0 g/m² (14 lb. Bond–193 lb. Index) Supports paper weight between 300.1 and 350.0 g/m² (165–193 lb. Index): when using the designated paper. • Fold applied (Z-fold, Letter Fold-in/out) Plain paper: 64.0–105.0 g/m² (17–28 lb. Bond) Coated paper: 64.0–150.0 g/m² (17–40 lb. Bond)
<p>Stack capacity for the Finisher Shift Tray 1 (80 g/m², 21 lb. Bond)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fold not applied: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1,000 sheets: A4☐, B5 JIS☐, 8 1/2 × 11☐ • 500 sheets: other sizes • 100 sheets: A5☐, A6☐, B6 JIS☐, 5 1/2 × 8 1/2☐, 4 1/5 × 5 1/2☐ • With Z-fold: 30 sheets • With Half Fold: 50 sheets • With Letter Fold-in/out: 75 sheets • With output banner sheet tray 200 sheets • With extension output banner sheet tray 488–762 mm (19.2–30 inches) long: 230 sheets 762.1–1030 mm (30–40.6 inches) long: 100 sheets 1030.1–1260 mm (40.6–49.6 inches) long: 50 sheets

Item	Specifications
Paper size for the Finisher Shift Tray 2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fold not applied: A3, A4, A5, A6, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, B6 JIS, 11 × 17, 8¹/₂ × 14, 8¹/₂ × 13, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8¹/₄ × 14, 8¹/₄ × 13, 8 × 13, 8 × 10, 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂, 8K, 16K, 12 × 18, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 13 × 19¹/₅, 13 × 19, 12³/₅ × 19¹/₅, 12³/₅ × 18¹/₂, 13 × 18, SRA3, SRA4, 226 × 310, 310 × 432, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅, 4¹/₅ × 5¹/₂, custom size • With Z-fold: A3, A4, B4 JIS, 11 × 17, 8¹/₂ × 14, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8K, 12 × 18, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅ • With Half Fold: A3, B4 JIS, A4, 12 × 18, 11 × 17, 8¹/₂ × 14, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8K, 13 × 19¹/₅, 13 × 19, 12³/₅ × 19¹/₅, 12³/₅ × 18¹/₂, 13 × 18, SRA3, SRA4, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅ • With Letter Fold-out: A3, 11 × 17 • With Letter Fold-in: A3, 11 × 17, custom size (Paper length 432–700 mm (17–27.6 inches))
Paper weight for the Finisher Shift Tray 2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fold not applied: 52.3–470.0 g/m² (14–125 lb. Bond) • Fold applied (Z-fold, Letter Fold-in/out) Plain paper: 64.0–105.0 g/m² (17–28 lb. Bond) Coated paper: 64.0–150.0 g/m² (17–40 lb. Bond)

Item	Specifications
<p>Stack capacity for the Finisher Shift Tray 2 (80 g/m², 21 lb. Bond)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fold not applied: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 3,500 sheets: A4☐, B5 JIS☐, 8¹/₂ × 11☐ • 1,500 sheets: A3☐, A4☐, B4 JIS☐, B5 JIS☐, 11 × 17☐, 8¹/₂ × 14☐, 8¹/₂ × 11☐, SRA4☐, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅☐ • 1,000 sheets: 12 × 18☐, 13 × 19☐, SRA3☐, 13 × 18☐, 12³/₅ × 18¹/₂☐, 12³/₅ × 19¹/₅☐, 13 × 19¹/₅☐ • 500 sheets: A5☐, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂☐ • 100 sheets: A5☐, A6☐, B6 JIS☐, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂☐ • With Z-fold: 30 sheets • With Half Fold: 50 sheets • With Letter Fold-in/out: 75 sheets • With output banner sheet tray 200 sheets • With extension output banner sheet tray 488–700 mm (19.2–27.6 inches) long: 300 sheets* 700.1–762 mm (27.6–30 inches) long: 300 sheets 762.1–1030 mm (30–40.6 inches) long: 100 sheets 1030.1–1260 mm (40.6–49.6 inches) long: 50 sheets <p>* 200 sheets for paper of 105 g/m² (28 lb. Bond) or lighter because you need to attach banner support tray.</p>
<p>Paper sizes that can be shifted when delivered to both finisher trays</p>	<p>A3☐, A4, A5, B4 JIS☐, B5 JIS, 11 × 17☐, 8¹/₂ × 14☐, 8¹/₂ × 13☐, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8¹/₄ × 14☐, 8¹/₄ × 13☐, 8 × 13☐, 8 × 10☐, 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂, 8K☐, 16K, 12 × 18☐, 11 × 15☐, 11 × 14☐, 10 × 15☐, 10 × 14☐, 13 × 19¹/₅☐, 13 × 19☐, 12³/₅ × 19¹/₅☐, 12³/₅ × 18¹/₂☐, 13 × 18☐, SRA3☐, SRA4, 226 × 310, 310 × 432☐, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅☐, 8¹/₂ × 13¹/₂☐, custom size</p>

Item	Specifications
Paper weight that can be shifted when delivered to the Finisher Shift Tray 1	52.3–350.0 g/m ² (14 lb. Bond–193 lb. Index) Supports paper weight between 300.1 and 350.0 g/m ² (165–193 lb. Index): when using the designated paper.
Paper weight that can be shifted when delivered to the Finisher Shift Tray 2	52.3–470.0 g/m ² (14–125 lb. Bond)
Staple paper size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Without Z-fold: A3☐, A4, B4 JIS☐, B5 JIS, 11 × 17☐, 8¹/₂ × 14☐, 8¹/₂ × 13☐, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8¹/₄ × 14☐, 8¹/₄ × 13☐, 8 × 13☐, 8 × 10☐, 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂, 8K☐, 16K, 11 × 15☐, 11 × 14☐, 10 × 15☐, 10 × 14☐, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅☐ • With Z-fold: A3☐, B4 JIS☐, 11 × 17☐, 8K☐ • With Z-fold and Mixed Sizes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A3☐/A4☐ • B4 JIS☐/B5 JIS☐ • 11 × 17☐/8¹/₂ × 11☐ • 8K☐/16K☐
Staple paper weight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Without Z-fold: 63.1–80.0 g/m² (17–21 lb. Bond)) You can use up to two sheets of paper weighing between 80.1 g/m² (21 lb. Bond) and 200.0 g/m² (74 lb. Cover) per set as a slip sheet. • With Z-fold: 64.0–105.0 g/m² (17–28 lb. Bond)

Item	Specifications
Staple capacity (80 g/m ² , 21 lb. Bond)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Without Z-fold and Mixed Sizes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 50 sheets: A3, B4 JIS, 11 × 17, 8¹/₂ × 14, 8¹/₂ × 13, 8¹/₄ × 14, 8¹/₄ × 13, 8 × 13, 8K, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅ • 100 sheets: A4, B5 JIS, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8 × 10, 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂, 16K • With Mixed Sizes: 50 sheets (A3/A4, B4 JIS/B5 JIS, 11 × 17/8¹/₂ × 11, 8K/16K) • With Z-fold: 10 sheets • Combination of Z-folded sheets and unfolded sheets: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 10 Z-folded sheets • 9 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 10 unfolded sheets • 8 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 20 unfolded sheets • 7 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 30 unfolded sheets • 6 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 40 unfolded sheets • 5 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 50 unfolded sheets • 4 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 60 unfolded sheets • 3 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 70 unfolded sheets • 2 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 80 unfolded sheets • 1 Z-folded sheet and 1 to 90 unfolded sheets

Item	Specifications
Stack capacity after stapling (80 g/m ² , 21 lb. Bond)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Without Z-fold and Mixed Sizes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 20–100 sheets: 150–30 sets (A4□, B5 JIS□, 8¹/₂ × 11□) • 10–19 sheets: 200–105 sets (A4□, B5 JIS□, 8¹/₂ × 11□) • 2–9 sheets: 150 sets (A4□, B5 JIS□, 8¹/₂ × 11□) • 10–100 sheets: 150–15 sets (A4□, B5 JIS□, 8¹/₂ × 11□) • 2–9 sheets: 150 sets (A4□, B5 JIS□, 8¹/₂ × 11□) • 10–50 sheets: 150–30 sets (Other sizes) • 2–9 sheets: 150 sets (A3□, B4 JIS□, 11 × 17□, 8¹/₂ × 14□, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅□) • With Z-fold and Mixed Sizes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1–10 sheets: 30–3 sets (A3 Z-folded paper with A4, B4 JIS Z-folded paper with B5 JIS, 11 × 17 Z-folded paper with 8¹/₂ × 11, 8K Z-folded paper with 16K) • With Mixed Sizes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 2–50 sheets: 30 sets (A3□/A4□, B4 JIS□/B5 JIS□, 11 × 17□/8¹/₂ × 11□, 8K□/16K□)
Staple position	7 positions (Top, Top Slant, Bottom, Top 2, Left 2, Right 1, Right 2)
Power requirements	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  Region A (mainly Europe and Asia) 220–240 V, 1.2 A, 50/60Hz •  Region B (mainly North America) 100–127 V, 2.0 A, 50/60 Hz
Maximum power consumption	150 W or less (A separate power source is required.)

Item	Specifications
Dimensions (W × D × H)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Without output banner sheet tray and extension output banner sheet tray 1,113 × 730 × 1,415 mm (43.9 × 28.8 × 55.8 inches) • With output banner sheet tray On the upper tray only: 1,289 × 730 × 1,623 mm (50.8 × 28.8 × 63.9 inches) On the lower tray only: 1,340 × 730 × 1,415 mm (52.8 × 28.8 × 55.7 inches) On both the upper and lower trays: 1,340 × 730 × 1,623 mm (52.8 × 28.8 × 63.9 inches) • With extension output banner sheet tray On the upper tray only: 1,876 × 730 × 1,617 mm (50.8 × 28.8 × 63.9 inches) On the upper tray only: 1,926 × 730 × 1,415 mm (75.9 × 28.8 × 55.7 inches) On the upper and lower trays: 1,926 × 730 × 1,617 mm (75.9 × 28.8 × 63.7 inches)
Weight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Without output banner sheet tray and extension output banner sheet tray 130 kg (286.6 lb.) or less • With output banner sheet tray On the upper tray only: 131.1 kg (289.1 lb.) or less On the lower tray only: 131.1 kg (289.1 lb.) or less On both the upper and lower trays: 132.2 kg (291.5 lb.) or less • With extension output banner sheet tray On the upper tray only: 143 kg (315.3 lb.) or less On the lower tray only: 143 kg (315.3 lb.) or less On both the upper and lower trays: 156 kg (344 lb.) or less

Note

- For paper between 80.1 g/m² (21 lb. Bond) and 105.0 g/m² (28 lb. Bond), the staple capacity is a half that of 80.0 g/m² (21 lb. Bond) paper.
- For paper between 105.1 g/m² (28 lb. Bond) and 220.0 g/m² (81 lb. Cover), the staple capacity is one-third that of 80.0 g/m² (21 lb. Bond) paper.

Specifications for Booklet Finisher

Item	Specifications
<p>Paper size for the Finisher Shift Tray 1</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fold not applied: A3☐, A4, A5, A6☐, B4 JIS☐, B5 JIS, B6 JIS☐, 11 × 17☐, 8¹/₂ × 14☐, 8¹/₂ × 13☐, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8¹/₄ × 14☐, 8¹/₄ × 13☐, 8 × 13☐, 8 × 10☐, 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂, 8K☐, 16K, 12 × 18☐, 11 × 15☐, 11 × 14☐, 10 × 15☐, 10 × 14☐, 13 × 19¹/₅☐, 13 × 19☐, 12³/₅ × 19¹/₅☐, 12³/₅ × 18¹/₂☐, 13 × 18☐, SRA3☐, SRA4, 226 × 310, 310 × 432☐, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅☐, 4¹/₅ × 5¹/₂☐, custom size • With Z-fold: A3☐, A4☐, B4 JIS☐, 11 × 17☐, 8¹/₂ × 14☐, 8¹/₂ × 11☐, 8K☐, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅☐ • With Half Fold: A3☐, B4 JIS☐, A4☐, 12 × 18☐, 11 × 17☐, 8¹/₂ × 14☐, 8¹/₂ × 11☐, 8K☐, 13 × 19¹/₅☐, 13 × 19☐, 12³/₅ × 19¹/₅☐, 12³/₅ × 18¹/₂☐, 13 × 18☐, SRA3☐, SRA4☐, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅☐ • With Letter Fold-out: A3☐, 11 × 17☐ • With Letter Fold-in: A3☐, 11 × 17☐, custom size (Paper length 432–700 mm (17–27.6 inches))
<p>Paper weight for the Finisher Shift Tray 1</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fold not applied: 52.3–350.0 g/m² (14 lb. Bond–193 lb. Index) Supports paper weight between 300.1 and 350.0 g/m² (165–193 lb. Index): when using the designated paper. • Fold applied (Z-fold, Letter Fold-in/out) Plain paper: 64–105 g/m² (17–28 lb. Bond) Coated paper: 64.0–150.0 g/m² (17–40 lb. Bond)

Item	Specifications
<p>Stack capacity for the Finisher Shift Tray 1 (80 g/m², 21 lb. Bond)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fold not applied: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1,000 sheets: A4☐, B5 JIS☐, 8¹/₂ × 11☐ • 500 sheets: other sizes • 100 sheets: A5☐, A6☐, B6 JIS☐, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂☐, 4¹/₅ × 5¹/₂☐ • With Z-fold: 30 sheets • With Half Fold: 50 sheets • With Letter Fold-in/out: 75 sheets • With output banner sheet tray attached 200 sheets • With extension output banner sheet tray <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 488–762 mm (19.2–30 inches) long: 230 sheets 762.1–1030 mm (30–40.6 inches) long: 100 sheets 1030.1–1260 mm (40.6–49.6 inches) long: 50 sheets

Item	Specifications
<p>Paper size for the Finisher Shift Tray 2</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fold not applied: A3☐, A4, A5, A6☐, B4 JIS☐, B5 JIS, B6 JIS☐, 11 × 17☐, 8¹/₂ × 14☐, 8¹/₂ × 13☐, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8¹/₄ × 14☐, 8¹/₄ × 13☐, 8 × 13☐, 8 × 10☐, 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂, 8K☐, 16K, 12 × 18☐, 11 × 15☐, 11 × 14☐, 10 × 15☐, 10 × 14☐, 13 × 19¹/₅☐, 13 × 19☐, 12³/₅ × 19¹/₅☐, 12³/₅ × 18¹/₂☐, 13 × 18☐, SRA3☐, SRA4, 226 × 310, 310 × 432☐, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅☐, 4¹/₅ × 5¹/₂☐, custom size • With Z-fold: A3☐, A4☐, B4 JIS☐, 11 × 17☐, 8¹/₂ × 14☐, 8¹/₂ × 11☐, 8K☐, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅☐ • With Half Fold: A3☐, B4 JIS☐, A4☐, 12 × 18☐, 11 × 17☐, 8¹/₂ × 14☐, 8¹/₂ × 11☐, 8K☐, 13 × 19¹/₅☐, 13 × 19☐, 12³/₅ × 19¹/₅☐, 12³/₅ × 18¹/₂☐, 13 × 18☐, SRA3☐, SRA4☐, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅☐ • With Letter Fold-out: A3☐, 11 × 17☐ • With Letter Fold-in: A3☐, 11 × 17☐, custom size (Paper length 432–700 mm (17–27.6 inches))
<p>Paper weight for the Finisher Shift Tray 2</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • F Fold not applied: 52.3–470.0 g/m² (14–125 lb. Bond) • Fold applied (Z-fold, Letter Fold-in/out) Plain paper: 64–105 g/m² (17–28 lb. Bond) Coated paper: 64.0–150.0 g/m² (17–40 lb. Bond)

Item	Specifications
<p>Stack capacity for the Finisher Shift Tray 2 (80 g/m², 21 lb. Bond)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fold not applied: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2,500 sheets: A4, B5 JIS, 8 1/2 × 11 • 1,500 sheets: A3, A4, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 11, SRA4, 226 × 310 mm, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5 • 1,000 sheets: 12 × 18, 13 × 19, SRA3, 13 × 18, 12 3/5 × 18 1/2, 12 3/5 × 19 1/5, 13 × 19 1/5 • 500 sheets: A5, 5 1/2 × 8 1/2 • 100 sheets: A5, A6, B6 JIS, 5 1/2 × 8 1/2 • With Z-fold: 30 sheets • With Half Fold: 50 sheets • With Letter Fold-in/out: 75 sheets • With output banner sheet tray attached 200 sheets • With extension output banner sheet tray 488–700 mm (19.2–27.6 inches) long: 300 sheets* 700.1–762 mm (27.6–30 inches) long: 300 sheets 762.1–1030 mm (30–40.6 inches) long: 100 sheets 1030.1–1260 mm (40.6–49.6 inches) long: 50 sheets <p>* 200 sheets for paper of 105 g/m² (28 lb. Bond) or lighter because you need to attach banner support tray</p>
<p>Paper sizes that can be shifted when delivered to both finisher trays</p>	<p>A3, A4, A5, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 13, 8 1/2 × 11, 8 1/4 × 14, 8 1/4 × 13, 8 × 13, 8 × 10, 7 1/4 × 10 1/2, 5 1/2 × 8 1/2, 8K, 16K, 12 × 18, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 13 × 19 1/5, 13 × 19, 12 3/5 × 19 1/5, 12 3/5 × 18 1/2, 13 × 18, SRA3, SRA4, 226 × 310, 310 × 432, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5, 8 1/2 × 13 1/2, custom size</p>

Item	Specifications
Paper weight that can be shifted when delivered to the Finisher Shift Tray 1	52.3–350.0 g/m ² (14 lb. Bond–193 lb. Index) Supports paper weight between 300.1 and 350.0 g/m ² (165–193 lb. Index): when using the designated paper.
Paper weight that can be shifted when delivered to the Finisher Shift Tray 2	52.3–470.0 g/m ² (14–125 lb. Bond) Note <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When [Enable] is specified in [Unlimited paper output] of [Shift Tray Settings] under the [Settings] hub ► [Printer Settings] ► [Settings of Output Tray], it conforms to the supported paperweight of finisher shift tray 1.
Paper size for the Finisher Booklet Tray	A3☐, A4☐, B4 JIS☐, B5 JIS☐, 11 × 17☐, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14☐, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13☐, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11☐, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14☐, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13☐, 8 × 13☐, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ ☐, 8K☐, 16K☐, 12 × 18☐, 11 × 15☐, 11 × 14☐, 10 × 15☐, 10 × 14☐, 13 × 19 ¹ / ₅ ☐, 13 × 19☐, 12 ³ / ₅ × 19 ¹ / ₂ ☐, 12 ³ / ₅ × 18 ¹ / ₂ ☐, 13 × 18☐, SRA3☐, SRA4☐, 226 × 310, 310 × 432☐, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ ☐, custom size
Paper weight for the Finisher Booklet Tray	52.3–350.0 g/m ² (14 lb. Bond– 193 lb. Index)
Staple paper size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Without Z-fold: A3☐, A4, B4 JIS☐, B5 JIS, 11 × 17☐, 8¹/₂ × 14☐, 8¹/₂ × 13☐, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8¹/₄ × 14☐, 8¹/₄ × 13☐, 8 × 13☐, 8 × 10☐, 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂☐, 8K☐, 16K, 11 × 15☐, 11 × 14☐, 10 × 15☐, 10 × 14☐, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅☐ With Z-fold: A3☐, B4 JIS☐, 11 × 17☐, 8K☐ With Z-fold and Mixed Sizes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A3☐/A4☐ B4 JIS☐/B5 JIS☐ 11 × 17☐/8¹/₂ × 11☐ 8K☐/16K☐

Item	Specifications
Staple paper weight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Without Z-fold: 63.1–80.0 g/m² (17 lb. Bond–21 lb. Bond) <p>You can use up to two sheets of paper weighing between 80.1 g/m² (21 lb. Bond) and 200.0 g/m² (74 lb. Cover) per set as a slip sheet.</p> <p>Note</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For paper between 80.1 g/m² (21 lb. Bond) and 105.0 g/m² (28 lb. Bond), the staple capacity is a half that of 80.0 g/m² (21 lb. Bond) paper. • For paper between 105.1 g/m² (28 lb. Bond) and 200.0 g/m² (74 lb. Cover), the staple capacity is one-third that of 80.0 g/m² (21 lb. Bond) paper. • With Z-fold: 64.0–105.0 g/m² (17–28 lb. Bond)

Item	Specifications
Staple capacity (80 g/m ² , 21 lb. Bond)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Without Z-fold and Mixed Sizes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 50 sheets: A3, B4 JIS, 11 × 17, 8¹/₂ × 14, 8¹/₂ × 13, 8¹/₄ × 14, 8¹/₄ × 13, 8 × 13, 8K, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅ • 100 sheets: A4, B5 JIS, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8 × 10, 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂, 16K • With Mixed Sizes: 50 sheets (A3/A4, B4 JIS/B5 JIS, 11 × 17/8¹/₂ × 11, 8K/16K) • With Z-fold: 10 sheets • Combination of Z-folded sheets and unfolded sheets: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 10 Z-folded sheets • 9 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 10 unfolded sheets • 8 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 20 unfolded sheets • 7 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 30 unfolded sheets • 6 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 40 unfolded sheets • 5 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 50 unfolded sheets • 4 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 60 unfolded sheets • 3 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 70 unfolded sheets • 2 Z-folded sheets and 0 to 80 unfolded sheets • 1 Z-folded sheet and 1 to 90 unfolded sheets

Item	Specifications
Stack capacity after stapling (80 g/m ² , 21 lb. Bond)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Without Z-fold and Mixed Sizes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 20–100 sheets: 150–30 sets (A4, B5 JIS, 8 1/2 × 11) • 10–19 sheets: 200–105 sets (A4, B5 JIS, 8 1/2 × 11) • 2–9 sheets: 150 sets (A4, B5 JIS, 8 1/2 × 11) • 10–100 sheets: 150–15 sets (A4, B5 JIS, 8 1/2 × 11) • 2–9 sheets: 150 sets (A4, B5 JIS, 8 1/2 × 11) • 10–50 sheets: 150–30 sets (A3, B4 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 13²/₅) • 2–9 sheets: 150 sets (A3, B4 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅) • With Z-fold and Mixed Sizes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1–10 sheets: 30–3 sets (A3 Z-folded paper with A4, B4 JIS Z-folded paper with B5 JIS, 11 × 17 Z-folded paper with 8¹/₂ × 11, 8K Z-folded paper with 16K) • With Mixed Sizes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 2–50 sheets: 30 sets (A3/A4, B4 JIS/B5 JIS, 11 × 17, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8K/16K)
Staple position	8 positions (Top, Top Slant, Bottom, Top 2, Left 2, Right 1, Right 2, Center)
Saddle stitch paper size	A3, A4, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13, 8 × 13, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 8K, 16K, 12 × 18, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 13 × 19 ¹ / ₅ , 13 × 19, 12 ³ / ₅ × 19 ¹ / ₅ , 12 ³ / ₅ × 18 ¹ / ₂ , 13 × 18, SRA3, SRA4, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ Custom size <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vertical: 182.0–330.2 mm (7.17–13.00 inches) • Horizontal: 257.0–487.7 mm (10.12–19.20 inches)

Item	Specifications
Saddle stitch weight and capacity	<p>Paper weighing between 52.3 and 63.0 g/m²: 30 sheets (When using designated paper)</p> <p>Paper weighing between 63.1 and 80.0 g/m²: 25 sheets (Supports up to 30 sheets when using the designated paper.)</p> <p>Paper weighing between 80.1 and 105.0 g/m²: 15 sheets</p> <p>Paper weighing between 105.1 and 163.0 g/m²: 10 sheets</p> <p>Paper weighing between 163.1 and 256.0 g/m²: 5 sheets</p> <p>Paper weighing between 256.1 and 350.0 g/m²: 3 sheets (When using designated paper)</p> <p>(Supports paper weight between 52.3 and 300.0 g/m²: when using the trimmer unit.)</p>
Cover sheet weight and stitch capacity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cover sheet weighing between 80.1 and 105.0 g/m² Book block weighing between 52.3 and 63.0 g/m²: 28 sheets Book block weighing between 63.1 and 80.0 g/m²: 23 sheets Book block weighing between 80.1 and 105.0 g/m²: 13 sheets • Cover sheet weighing between 105.1 and 163.0 g/m² Book block weighing between 52.3 and 63.0 g/m²: 27 sheets Book block weighing between 63.1 and 80.0 g/m²: 22 sheets Book block weighing between 80.1 and 105.0 g/m²: 12 sheets
Stack capacity after saddle stitching (80 g/m ² , 21 lb. Bond)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2–5 sheets: 45 sets • 6–10 sheets: 23 sets • 11–15 sheets: 15 sets • 16–20 sheets: 10 sets • 21–30 sheets: 5 sets
Saddle stitch position	Center 2 positions
Position of saddle stitch	Center
Types of folds	Half Fold

Item	Specifications
Half fold paper size	<p>A3, A4, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11 × 17, 8¹/₂ × 14, 8¹/₂ × 13, 8¹/₂ × 11,</p> <p>8¹/₄ × 14, 8¹/₄ × 13, 8 × 13, 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂, 8K, 16K, 12 × 18, 11 × 15,</p> <p>11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 13 × 19¹/₅, 13 × 19, 12³/₅ × 19¹/₅,</p> <p>12³/₅ × 18¹/₂, 13 × 18, SRA3, SRA4, 226 × 310, 310 × 432, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅</p> <p>Custom size</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vertical: 182.0–330.2 mm (7.17–13.00 inches) • Horizontal: 257.0–487.7 mm (10.12–19.20 inches)
Folding capacity of half folding function	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 6 sheets: 52.3–105.0 g/m² (14–28 lb. Bond) • 2 sheets: 105.1–163.0 g/m² (28 lb. Bond–60 lb. Cover) • 1 sheet: 163.1–350.0 g/m² (60 lb. Cover–193 lb. Index)
Power requirements	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  Region A (mainly Europe and Asia) 220–240 V, 1.2 A, 50/60 Hz •  Region B (mainly North America) 100–127 V, 2.0 A, 50/60 Hz
Maximum power consumption	150 W or less (A separate power source is required.)

Item	Specifications
Dimensions (W × D × H)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Without output banner sheet tray and extension output banner sheet tray 1,113 × 730 × 1,415 mm (43.9 × 28.8 × 55.8 inches) • With output banner sheet tray On the upper tray only: 1,289 × 730 × 1,623 mm (50.8 × 28.8 × 63.9 inches) On the lower tray only: 1,340 × 730 × 1,415 mm (52.8 × 28.8 × 55.7 inches) On both the upper and lower trays: 1,340 × 730 × 1,623 mm (52.8 × 28.8 × 63.9 inches) • With extension output banner sheet tray On the upper tray only: 1,876 × 730 × 1,617 mm (50.8 × 28.8 × 63.9 inches) On the upper tray only: 1,926 × 730 × 1,415 mm (75.9 × 28.8 × 55.7 inches) On the upper and lower trays: 1,926 × 730 × 1,617 mm (75.9 × 28.8 × 63.7 inches)
Weight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Without output banner sheet tray and extension output banner sheet tray 160 kg (352.8 lb.) or less • With output banner sheet tray On the upper tray only: 161.1 kg (355.2 lb.) or less On the lower tray only: 161.1 kg (355.2 lb.) or less On both the upper and lower trays: 162.2 kg (357.6 lb.) or less • With extension output banner sheet tray On the upper tray only: 173 kg (381.4 lb.) or less On the lower tray only: 173 kg (381.4 lb.) or less On both the upper and lower trays: 186 kg (410.1 lb.) or less

Specifications for Punch Unit (Finisher, Booklet Finisher)

Punch unit type	Paper size	Paper weight
2 & 4 holes type: 2 holes	☐: A3, A4, A5, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, B6 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13, 8 × 13, 8 × 10, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ , 8K, 16K, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, custom size	52.3–300.0 g/m ² (14 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index)
2 & 4 holes type: 2 holes	☐: A4, A5, B5 JIS, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ , 16K, custom size	
2 & 4 holes type: 4 holes	☐: A3, B4 JIS, 11 × 17, 8K, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, custom size	
2 & 4 holes type: 4 holes	☐: A4, B5 JIS, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 16K, custom size	
4 holes type: 4 holes	☐: A3, A4, A5, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, B6 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13, 8 × 13, 8 × 10, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ , 8K, 16K, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, custom size	52.3–300.0 g/m ² (14 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index)
4 holes type: 4 holes	☐: A4, A5, B5 JIS, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ , 16K, custom size	
2 & 3 holes type: 2 holes	☐: A3, A4, A5, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, B6 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13, 8 × 13, 8 × 10, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ , 8K, 16K, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, custom size	52.3–300.0 g/m ² (14 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index)
2 & 3 holes type: 2 holes	☐: A4, A5, B5 JIS, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 5 ¹ / ₂ × 8 ¹ / ₂ , 16K, custom size	
2 & 3 holes type: 3 holes	☐: A3, B4 JIS, 11 × 17, 8K, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, custom size	
2 & 3 holes type: 3 holes	☐: A4, B5 JIS, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 16K, custom size	

Specifications for Interposer

Item	Specifications
Page size	page 101 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"
Paper capacity	page 101 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"
Paper weight	page 101 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"
Power requirements	Power is supplied from the main unit.
Maximum power consumption	95 W
Dimensions (W × D × H)	740 × 730 × 1,350 mm (29.1 × 28.8 × 53.1 inches) (Except protruding parts)
Weight	60 kg (132.3 lb.)

Specifications for Multi-Folding Unit

Item	Specifications
Paper size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • With Z-fold: A3, A4, B4 JIS, 11 × 17, 8¹/₂ × 14, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8K, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅ • With Half Fold: A3, A4, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11 × 17, 8¹/₂ × 14, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8K, 12 × 18, 13 × 19¹/₅, 13 × 19, 12³/₅ × 19¹/₅, 12³/₅ × 18¹/₂, 13 × 18, SRA3, SRA4, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅ • With Letter Fold-in A3, A4, 11 × 17, 8¹/₂ × 14, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅ • With Letter Fold-out A3, A4, B4 JIS, 11 × 17, 8¹/₂ × 14, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅ • With Multi-sheet Fold: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Letter Fold-in, Letter Fold-out: A4, 8¹/₂ × 11
Paper weight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • With Z-fold, Half Fold, Letter Fold-out, Letter Fold-in: 64.0–105.0 g/m² (17–28 lb. Bond) • With Multi-sheet Fold: 64.0–80.0 g/m² (17–21 lb. Bond)
Power requirements	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  Region A (mainly Europe and Asia) 220–240 V, 50/60 Hz, 0.5 A •  Region B (mainly North America) 100–127 V, 50/60 Hz, 0.8 A <p>(A separate power source is required.)</p>
Maximum power consumption	60 W or less
Dimensions (W × D × H)	209 × 730 × 1,000 mm (8.2 × 28.8 × 39.4 inches) (Except protruding parts)

Item	Specifications
Weight	45 kg (99.3 lb.) or less

Specifications for Wide LCT

Item	Specifications
Page size	page 101 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"
Paper capacity (80 g/m ² , 21 lb. Bond)	page 101 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"
Paper weight	page 101 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"
Power requirements	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  Region A (mainly Europe and Asia) 220–240 V, 5.5 A, 50/60 Hz •  Region B (mainly North America) 100–127 V, 11 A, 50/60 Hz (A separate power source is required.)
Maximum power consumption	1,000 W or less
Dimensions (W × D × H)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Without LCT banner sheet tray and Extension LCT banner sheet tray: 1,054 × 730 × 1,000 mm (40.4 × 28.7 × 39.4 inches) (Except protruding parts) • With LCT banner sheet tray: 1,290 × 730 × 1,000 mm (50.8 × 28.8 × 39.4 inches) (Except protruding parts) • With extension LCT banner sheet tray: 1,519 × 730 × 1,000 mm (59.9 × 28.8 × 39.4 inches)

Item	Specifications
Weight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Without LCT banner sheet tray and Extension LCT banner sheet tray: 230 kg (507.1 lb.) or less • With LCT banner sheet tray: 237 kg (522.5 lb.) or less • With extension LCT banner sheet tray: 253 kg (557.8 lb.) or less

Specifications for Multi Bypass Tray (Tray A)

Item	Specifications
Page size	page 101 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"
Paper capacity (80 g/m ² , 21 lb. Bond)	page 101 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"
Paper weight	page 101 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types"
Power requirements	Power is supplied from the main unit.
Maximum power consumption	70 W or less
Dimensions (W × D × H)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Without multi bypass banner sheet tray: 690 × 561 × 210 mm (27.2 × 22.1 × 8.3 inches) (Except protruding parts) • With multi bypass banner sheet tray: 1,090 × 561 × 210 mm (43.0 × 22.1 × 8.3 inches) (Except protruding parts)
Weight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Without multi bypass banner sheet tray: 20 kg (44.1 lb.) or less • With multi bypass banner sheet tray: 25 kg (55.2 lb.) or less

Specifications for Wide LCT Connection Unit

Item	Specifications
Power requirements	5V/24V
Maximum power consumption	85 W or less
Dimensions (W × D × H)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Unit only: 330 × 730 × 1,000 mm (13.0 × 28.7 × 39.4 inches) (Except protruding parts) When installed(With wide LCT): 1,384 × 730 × 1,000 mm (54.5 × 28.8 × 39.4 inches) (Except protruding parts)
Weight	60 kg (132 lb.) or less

Specifications for Buffer Pass Unit

Item	Specifications
Paper size	<p>A3, A4, A5, A6, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, B6 JIS, 11 × 17, 8¹/₂ × 14, 8¹/₂ × 13, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8¹/₄ × 14, 8¹/₄ × 13, 8 × 13, 8 × 10, 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂, 8K, 16K, 12 × 18, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 13 × 19¹/₅, 13 × 19, 12³/₅ × 19¹/₅, 12³/₅ × 18¹/₂, 13 × 18, SRA3, SRA4, 226 × 310, 310 × 432, 4¹/₅ × 5¹/₂, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅</p> <p>Custom size:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Vertical: 100.0–330.2 mm (3.94–13.00 inches) Horizontal: 139.7–487.7 mm (5.50–19.20 inches)
Paper weight	52.3–360.0 g/m ² (14 lb. Bond–198 lb. Index)

Item	Specifications
Power requirements	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  Region A (mainly Europe and Asia) 220–240 V, 50/60 Hz, 1A •  Region B (mainly North America) 100–120 V, 50/60 Hz, 3 A (A separate power source is required.)
Maximum power consumption	200 W or less
Dimensions (W × D × H)	330 × 730 × 1,000 mm (13.0 × 28.7 × 39.4 inches)
Weight	90 kg (198.5 lb.) or less

Specifications for Trimmer

Item	Specifications
Paper size	A3, A4, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 11, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 14, 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13, 8 × 13, 7 ¹ / ₄ × 10 ¹ / ₂ , 8K, 16K, 12 × 18, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 13 × 19 ¹ / ₅ , 13 × 19, 12 ³ / ₅ × 19 ¹ / ₅ , 12 ³ / ₅ × 18 ¹ / ₂ , 13 × 18, SRA3, SRA4, 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 ² / ₅ , custom size <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vertical: 182.0–330.2 mm (7.17–13.00 inches) • Horizontal: 257.0–487.7 mm (10.12–19.20 inches)
Paper weight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cut supported: 64.0–300 g/m² (17 lb. Bond–165 lb. Index) • Eject supported: 52.3–360 g/m² (14–96 lb. Bond)

Item	Specifications
Fore edge cut capacity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Paper of 64.0 g/m²–80.0 g/m² (17–21 lb. Bond): 25 sheets (30 sheets of paper of the brand that is recommended by the manufacturer only can be bound) • 28 sheets (80.0 g/m², 21 lb. Bond)+1 sheet (163 g/m², 60 lb. Cover)(paper of the brand that is recommended by the manufacturer) • 23 sheets (80.0 g/m², 21 lb. Bond)+1 sheet (163 g/m², 60 lb. Cover)(paper of non-recommended brand) • Paper of 80.1 g/m²–105.0 g/m² (21–28 lb. Bond): 15 sheets • Paper of 105.1 g/m²–163.0 g/m² (28 lb. Bond–60 lb. Cover): 10 sheets • Paper of 163.1 g/m²–256.0 g/m² (60 lb. Cover–140 lb. Index): 5 sheets • Paper of 256.1 g/m²–300.0 g/m² (68–165 lb. Index): 3 sheets
Stack capacity (A4□, 8 1/2 × 11□, 80 g/m ² , 21 lb. Bond)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1–5 sheets: 60 sets • 6–10 sheets: 40 sets • 11–15 sheets: 25 sets • 16–20 sheets: 25 sets • 21–30 sheets: 20 sets
Power requirements	100–240 V, 2 A, 50/60 Hz (A separate power source is required.)
Maximum power consumption	Maximum 250 W
Dimensions (W × D × H)	1,115 × 591 × 555 mm (43.9 × 23.3 × 21.9 inches)
Weight	75 kg (165.4 lb.) or less

Specifications for High Capacity Stacker

Item	Specifications
Paper size for the stacker upper tray	A3, A4, A5, A6, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, B6 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5, 8 1/2 × 13, 8 1/2 × 11, 8 1/4 × 14, 8 1/4 × 13, 8 × 13, 8 × 10, 7 1/4 × 10 1/2, 5 1/2 × 8 1/2, 8K, 16K, 12 × 18, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 13 × 19 1/5, 13 × 19, 12 3/5 × 19 1/5, 12 3/5 × 18 1/2, 13 × 18, SRA3, SRA4, 226 × 310, 310 × 432, 4 1/5 × 5 1/2, custom size
Paper weight for the stacker upper tray	40.0–470.0 g/m ² (11–125 lb. Bond) (only the brand that is recommended by the manufacturer is accepted for paper of 40.0–52.2g/m ² , 11–14 lb. Bond)
Stack capacity for the stacker upper tray (80 g/m ² , 21 lb. Bond)	250 sheets
Paper size for the stacker tray	A3, A4, A5, B4 JIS, B5 JIS, 11 × 17, 8 1/2 × 14, 8 1/2 × 13 2/5, 8 1/2 × 13, 8 1/2 × 11, 8 1/4 × 14, 8 1/4 × 13, 8 × 13, 8 × 10, 7 1/4 × 10 1/2, 5 1/2 × 8 1/2, 8K, 16K, 12 × 18, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 13 × 19 1/5, 13 × 19, 12 3/5 × 19 1/5, 12 3/5 × 18 1/2, 13 × 18, SRA3, SRA4, 226 × 310, 310 × 432, custom size
Paper weight for the stacker tray	40.0–470.0 g/m ² (11–125 lb. Bond) (only the brand that is recommended by the manufacturer is accepted for paper of 40.0–52.2g/m ² , 11–14 lb. Bond)

Item	Specifications
Stack capacity for the stacker tray (80 g/m ² , 21 lb. Bond)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 5,000 sheets: A3, A4, B4 JIS, 11 × 17, 8¹/₂ × 14, 8¹/₂ × 13²/₅, 8¹/₂ × 13, 8¹/₂ × 11, 8K, 12 × 18, 11 × 15, 11 × 14, 10 × 15, 10 × 14, 13 × 19¹/₅, 13 × 19, 12³/₅ × 19¹/₅, 12³/₅ × 18¹/₂, 13 × 18, SRA3, SRA4, 226 × 310, 310 × 432 2,500 sheets: A5, B5 JIS, 8 × 13, 8¹/₄ × 14, 8¹/₄ × 13, 8 × 10, 7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂, 5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂, 16K
Power requirements	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  Region A (mainly Europe and Asia) 220–240 V, 50/60 Hz, 1.1 A  Region B (mainly North America) 100–127 V, 50/60 Hz, 2.3 A
Maximum power consumption	<ul style="list-style-type: none">  Region A (mainly Europe and Asia) 144W  Region B (mainly North America) 137W <p>(A separate power source is required. However, a voltage of 5 V or 24 V supplied from the main unit is required.)</p>
Dimensions (W × D × H)	900 × 730 × 1,000 mm (35.5 × 28.8 × 39.4 inches)
Weight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> High capacity stacker: 120 kg (264.6 lb.) or less Stacker cart: 15 kg (33.1 lb.) or less

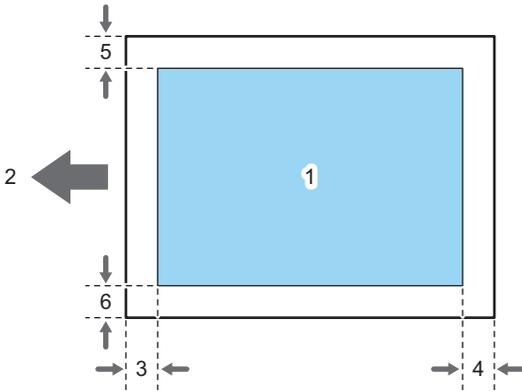
Specifications for Perfect Binder

Item	Specifications
Paper size (cover)	For details, see page 101 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types".

Item	Specifications
Paper size (book block)	<p>A4, B5 JIS, 8 1/2 × 11, 7 1/4 × 10 1/2, 16K, SRA4</p> <p>Custom size:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Vertical: 257.0–320.0 mm (10.12–12.59 inches) Horizontal: 182.0–228.6 mm (7.17–9.00 inches) <p>and an aspect ratio between 1.25 and 1.5</p> <p>The following paper sizes do not support duplex printing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> B5 Custom size: Horizontal: 182-199.9 mm (7.17-7.87 inches) <p>For details about what paper sizes support duplex printing, see page 280 "Specifications for the Main Unit".</p>
Paper weight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cover: For details, see page 101 "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types". Book block: 64.0–163.0 g/m² (17 lb. Bond–60 lb. Cover) <p>You can use 10 sheets of paper weighing between 106.0 g/m² (28 lb. Bond) and 163.0 g/m² (60 lb. Cover) per set as slip sheets.</p>
Perfect binding capacity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Book block capacity: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 10–200 sheets (paper weight: 64.0–80.0 g/m² (17–21 lb. Bond)) 10–150 sheets (paper weight: 81.0–105.0 g/m² (22–28 lb. Bond)) Book block spine: Up to 23.0 mm (0.90 inches)
Glue capacity	380 g (0.84 lb.)
Interposer on the perfect binder	Tray capacity: 200 sheets (max. paper stack height of 24 mm (0.95 inches)) × 2
Tray capacity for lower left tray (80 g/m ² (21 lb. Bond)) (Reference value)	<p>10-sheet book blocks: 26 sets</p> <p>30-sheet book blocks: 17 sets</p> <p>50-sheet book blocks: 13 sets</p> <p>80-sheet book blocks: 8 sets</p> <p>100-sheet book blocks: 7 sets</p> <p>200-sheet book blocks: 4 sets</p>

Item	Specifications
Power requirements	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•  Region A (mainly Europe and Asia) 220–240 V, 3 A, 50/60 Hz <li>•  Region B (mainly North America) 208 V, 3 A, 50/60 Hz
Power consumption	623 W or less (A separate power source is required.)
Dimensions (W × D × H)	1,090 × 791 × 1,387 mm (43.0 × 31.2 × 54.7 inches)
Weight	350 kg (771.7 lb.) or less

Printable Area and Margin



MOEBIM0507

1. Print area
2. Feed direction
3. Left margin (varies depending on the paper type)

Non-coated paper:

Approx. 7.0 ± 0.5 mm (0.3 ± 0.02 inches) for paper weight 0, approx. 5.0 ± 0.5 mm (0.2 ± 0.02 inches) for paper weight 1 to 3, and approx. 4.0 ± 0.5 mm (0.16 ± 0.02 inches) for paper weight 4 to 9

Coated paper:

Approx. 7.0 ± 0.5 mm (0.28 ± 0.02 inches) for paper weight 1 to 2, approx. 5.0 ± 0.5 mm (0.2 ± 0.02 inches) for paper weight 3, and approx. 4.0 ± 0.5 mm (0.16 ± 0.02 inches) for paper weight 4 to 9

4. Right margin (varies depending on the paper type)

Non-coated paper:

Approx. 7.0 ± 0.5 mm (0.3 ± 0.02 inches) for paper weight 0, approx. 5.0 ± 1.0 mm (0.2 ± 0.04 inches) for paper weight 1 to 3, and approx. 4.0 ± 1.0 mm (0.16 ± 0.04 inches) for paper weight 4 to 9

Coated paper:

Approx. 7.0 ± 1.0 mm (0.28 ± 0.04 inches) for paper weight 1 to 2, approx. 5.0 ± 1.0 mm (0.2 ± 0.04 inches) for paper weight 3, and approx. 4.0 ± 1.0 mm (0.16 ± 0.04 inches) for paper weight 4 to 9

5. Top margin

Approx. 2.0 ± 1.5 mm (0.08 ± 0.06 inches)

6. Bottom margin

Approx. 2.0 ± 1.5 mm (0.08 ± 0.06 inches)

↓ Note

- The machine does not support edge-to-edge printing. To minimize the margins, specify the maximum printable area with the settings on the printer driver.
- The printable area may vary due to the paper size or settings of the printer driver.
- The outside of the printable area can be printed due to the settings of the printer driver or printing condition; however, the print result may be different from the intended one or the paper may not be fed correctly.

8. Legal and Contact Information

Environmental Regulations

ENERGY STAR Program Region **B** (mainly North America)

ENERGY STAR® Program Requirements for Imaging Equipment



This company is a participant in the ENERGY STAR® Program.
This machine is compliant with the regulations specified by the ENERGY STAR® Program.

The ENERGY STAR® Program Requirements for Imaging Equipment encourage energy conservation by promoting energy efficient computers and other office equipment.

The program backs the development and dissemination of products that feature energy saving functions.

It is an open program in which manufacturers participate voluntarily.

Targeted products are computers, monitors, printers, facsimiles, copiers, scanners, and multi-function devices. Energy Star standards and logos are internationally uniform.

Energy Saving Functions

To reduce its power consumption, this machine has the following functions:

Low Power mode

- If this machine remains idle for a specified period, or when  (Energy Saver Key) is pressed, it automatically reduces its electrical consumption.
- The default period the machine waits before entering Low Power mode is 15 minutes. This default time can be changed.

Sleep mode

- If this machine remains idle for a specified period, or when  (Energy Saver Key) is pressed, it enters Sleep mode to further reduce its electrical consumption.

- The default delay time the machine waits before entering Sleep mode is 60 minutes. This default time can be changed.
- The machine can print jobs from computers while in Sleep mode.

Specification

 **Region A** (mainly Europe and Asia)

	Pro C7500	Pro C7500H
Reduced electrical consumption in Low Power mode ^{*1}	238 W	238 W
Time of switch into Low Power mode	15 minutes	15 minutes
Time of switch out from Low Power mode ^{*1}	100 seconds or less	100 seconds or less
Reduced electrical consumption in Sleep mode ^{*1}	10 W or less	10 W or less
Time of switch into Sleep mode	60 minutes	60 minutes
Time of switch out from Sleep mode ^{*1}	300 seconds or less	300 seconds or less
Duplex Function	Standard	Standard

^{*1} The time it takes to switch out from energy saving functions and electrical consumption may differ depending on the conditions and environment of the machine.

 **Region B** (mainly North America)

	Pro C7500	Pro C7500H
Reduced electrical consumption in Low Power mode ^{*1}	238 W	238 W
Time of switch into Low Power mode	15 minutes	15 minutes
Time of switch out from Low Power mode ^{*1}	100 seconds or less	100 seconds or less
Reduced electrical consumption in Sleep mode ^{*1}	10 W or less	10 W or less
Time of switch into Sleep mode	60 minutes	60 minutes
Time of switch out from Sleep mode ^{*1}	300 seconds or less	300 seconds or less
Duplex Function ^{*2}	Standard	Standard

- *1 The time it takes to switch out from energy saving functions and electrical consumption may differ depending on the conditions and environment of the machine.
- *2 Achieves ENERGY STAR energy savings; product fully qualifies when packaged with (or used with) a duplex tray and the duplex function is enabled as an option.

↓ Note

- The machine enters sleep mode directly in the following situations:
 - Low Power Mode Timer and Sleep Mode Timer are set to the same time
 - Sleep Mode Timer is set to a shorter time than Low Power Mode Timer
- See "Printer Settings", User Guide.
- It may take longer than the specified time to enter Sleep mode according to the type of Embedded Software Architecture application installed in the machine.

User Information on Electrical and Electronic Equipment Region **A** (mainly Europe)

Users in the countries where this symbol shown in this section has been specified in national law on collection and treatment of E-waste

Our Products contain high quality components and are designed to facilitate recycling.

Our products or product packaging are marked with the symbol below.



The symbol indicates that the product must not be treated as municipal waste. It must be disposed of separately via the appropriate return and collection systems available. By following these instructions you ensure that this product is treated correctly and help to reduce potential impacts on the environment and human health, which could otherwise result from inappropriate handling. Recycling of products helps to conserve natural resources and protect the environment.

For more detailed information on collection and recycling systems for this product, please contact the shop where you purchased it, your local dealer or sales/service representatives.

All Other Users

If you wish to discard this product, please contact your local authorities, the shop where you bought this product, your local dealer or sales/service representatives.

For Turkey only

AEEE Yönetmeliğine Uygundur.

Bu sistem sarf malzemeleri ve yedek parçaları da dahil olmak üzere AEEE Yönetmeliğine Uygundur.

Üretici:

Ricoh Company, Ltd.

3-6, Nakamagome 1-chome,

Ohta-ku, Tokyo 143-8555 Japan

+81-3-3777-8111 (English only/Sadece İngilizce)

User Information on Electrical and Electronic Equipment Region A (mainly Asia)

Users in the countries where this symbol shown in this section has been specified in national law on collection and treatment of E-waste

Our Products contain high quality components and are designed to facilitate recycling.

Our products or product packaging are marked with the symbol below.



The symbol indicates that the product must not be treated as municipal waste. It must be disposed of separately via the appropriate return and collection systems available. By following these instructions you ensure that this product is treated correctly and help to reduce potential impacts on the environment and human health, which could otherwise result from inappropriate handling. Recycling of products helps to conserve natural resources and protect the environment.

For more detailed information on collection and recycling systems for this product, please contact the shop where you purchased it, your local dealer or sales/service representatives.

All Other Users

If you wish to discard this product, please contact your local authorities, the shop where you bought this product, your local dealer or sales/service representatives.

For Users in India

This product including components, consumables, parts and spares complies with the "India E-waste Rule" and prohibits use of lead, mercury, hexavalent chromium, polybrominated biphenyls or polybrominated diphenyl ethers in concentrations exceeding 0.1 weight % and 0.01 weight % for cadmium, except for the exemptions set in the Rule.

Environmental Advice for Users Region **A** (mainly Europe)

Users in the EU, Switzerland and Norway

Consumables yield

Please refer to either the User's Manual for this information or the packaging of the consumable.

Recycled paper

The machine can use recycled paper which is produced in accordance with European standard EN 12281:2002 or DIN 19309. For products using EP printing technology, the machine can print on 64 g/m² paper, which contains less raw materials and represents a significant resource reduction.

Duplex printing (if applicable)

Duplex printing enables both sides of a sheet of paper to be used. This saves paper and reduces the size of printed documents so that fewer sheets are used. We recommend that this feature is enabled whenever you print.

Toner and ink cartridge return program

Toner and ink cartridge for recycling will be accepted free of charge from users in accordance with local regulations.

For details about the return program, please refer to the Web page below or consult your service person.

<https://www.rioh-return.com/>

Energy efficiency

The amount of electricity a machine consumes depends as much on its specifications as it does on the way you use it. The machine is designed to allow you to reduce electricity costs by switching to Ready mode after it prints the last page. If required, it can immediately print again from this mode. If no additional prints are required and a specified period of time passes, the device switches to an energy saving mode.

In these modes, the machine consumes less power (watts). If the machine is to print again, it needs a little longer to return from an energy saving mode than from Ready mode.

For maximum energy savings, we recommend that the default setting for power management is used.

Notes to users in the state of California (Notes to Users in USA) Region **B** (mainly North America)

Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply. See: www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate

Trademarks

Adobe and Acrobat are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

Kerberos is a trademark of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT).

Command WorkStation, Fiery, the Fiery logo, EFI are registered trademarks of Electronics for Imaging, Inc. in the U.S. and/or certain other countries.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights to those marks.

Microsoft product screen shots reprinted with permission from Microsoft Corporation.

MEMO

